



22 pages
of exercises



More than
1 hour of audio

YOUR ENGLISH SUPPLEMENT // Volume 18 // 9.95€

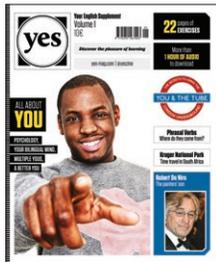
A CELEBRATION OF WOMEN





Treating you as an adult

Complete your collection of Yes while stocks last. Free shipping in Spain.



Yes 1
The one about you



Yes 2
Food



Yes 3
Sexology



Yes 4
Human physiology



Yes 5
The brain



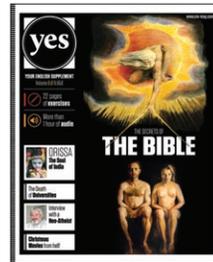
Yes 6
Emotions



Yes 7a
Gothic literature



Yes 7b
The law*



Yes 8
Religion



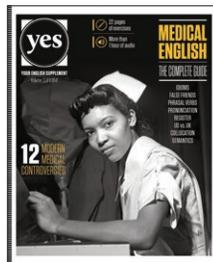
Yes 9
Love



Yes 10
Sleep and dreams



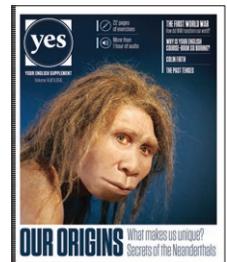
Yes 11
Geology



Yes 12
Medicine



Yes 13
Shakespeare



Yes 14
Palaeo-archaeology

Check out our special offers at www.yes-mag.com

* only available with this cover in digital format (the contents is the same for 7a and 7b).

GENERAL CONTENTS

This page should help you to navigate the magazine in general. Notice that on pages 6, 18, 69, 87 and 111 there are more details for each section of the magazine.



4 How to Use Your English Supplement

- 6 **Current Affairs Contents**
- 7 **News and anecdotes**
- 10 **Science News**
- 12 **Technology News**
- 13 **Economics: Women's Work**
- 16 **Psychology: What is psychoanalysis?**

- 18 **Women Dossier**
- 19 **Women in Science**
- 22 **Boudica: the First Anglo Heroine**
- 24 **Saxon Women: the Original Englishwomen**
- 26 **Margery Kempe: the First Autobiography**
- 28 **Lady Jane Grey: a Royal Tragedy**
- 31 **Witches: a social history**
- 34 **Women Pirates: a millennium on the high seas**
- 37 **Mary Wollstonecraft: a Revolution in Female Manners**
- 39 **Jane Austen: the World's Favourite Novelist**
- 42 **Islam and Victorian Women: skeletons in our closets**
- 44 **Isabella Bird: the globetrotter**
- 46 **Dorothy Parker: the most quoted woman ever**
- 48 **Margaret Sanger: sexual liberation**
- 51 **Women's Humour**
- 52 **Religion: Women and Society**
- 54 **Women Saints of the British Isles**
- 55 **A History of Women's Painting: anonymity and impediments**
- 58 **The Literature of Anglo women**
- 61 **SUBSCRIPTION FORM**
- 62 **Cinema: Bette Davis**
- 66 **Language: linguistic misogyny**

- 69 **The Grammar of Women**
- 70 **Grammar Focus: gender in English**
- 73 **Word Building: feminine affixes**
- 74 **Girls' Names**
- 78 **US vs. UK: gallis and dolls**
- 79 **Pronunciation: etymology and pronouncing 'women'**
- 80 **Idioms: women's expressions**
- 82 **False friends: false cognates for women**

83 **Phrasal verbs: humour and phrasal verbs**

- 84 **The YES community**
- 86 **Picture Description**

- 87 **Audio Scripts Contents**
- 88 **Audio Scripts**

- 111 **Exercises Contents**
- 112 **Exercises**

- 134 **Staff and contact addresses**
- 135 **In next month's issue**



Audio Download Code: Yes18_h25m_52

To download the audio files for this issue, please go to the 'Downloads' page on www.yes-mag.com for instructions. You will need the code given above to access the files.

How to Use Your English Supplement

SYMBOLS

Each page-long article in the magazine has been created to be used more or less independently so that you can learn and practise even if you only have five or ten minutes free.

At the same time, the symbols below allow you to develop a theme you are interested in more extensively. Teachers can use these symbols to instantly prepare a class or classes around a common theme.



Exercise (at the end of the magazine). Test and consolidate what you have learned.



Speaking extension. A question aimed at provoking a group discussion of the topic in question.



Downloadable audio file (see also audio scripts). There are recommendations on how best to use the audio files on p. 87.



This arrow directs you to other related articles in the magazine.



Listening extension (Internet). Once you've learned the basic vocabulary of a topic, why not listen to further discussions?



Photo by Gabbot

¹**to bring about** (bring-brought-brought) - cause

²**demise** - end, decline

³**scriptwriter** - sb. who writes the script (= text) of a movie

⁴**professor** - (*false friend*) head

of department at a university, senior academic

⁵**to set up** (set-set-set) - create, establish

⁶**to arise** (arise-arose-arisen) - emerge, occur

tellige
'the Si
beings

THE E

Some
will be
idea:

robots
in our
gent

octop
exper
licate

ity car
as dra
simple

obsole
from
1925,
but a

⁷**speed**

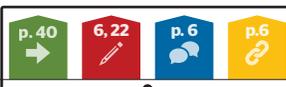
⁸**from**

⁹**naive**

¹⁰**to tre**

¹¹**scena**

thetic



ABBREVIATIONS KEY

These are the only abbreviations you have to know to use this magazine:

sb. = somebody

sth. = something

swh. = somewhere

[U] = uncountable noun

[C] = countable noun

FOOTNOTES

The superscript numbers in the text refer to the footnotes at the bottom or at the side of the same page. The footnotes explain the difficult vocabulary as determined by our non-native proofreaders. Like you, these proofreaders are learners so they are able to identify the exact words you need to know to understand the sentence. Definitions are given in English, so that you learn to think in English and these definitions are then checked by the non-native proofreaders to ensure that you will understand them. Some words are defined by pictures: we use these visual stimuli when that is the best way to fix an idea in your memory. Read the definition or look at the illustration and then re-read the sentence in question. By working with English-language footnotes you will rapidly increase your vocabulary and learn how English words relate to each other, all of which will have a dramatic impact on your fluency and **self-confidence**¹.

Some readers find it useful to put their finger next to the word in the article that they are looking for in the footnotes to make it easier to return to the text afterwards. Either way, it shouldn't be difficult to find your place because the footnotes are numbered and the words are highlighted in bold. Notice that the syllables and words that should be **stressed**² are underlined.

Red footnotes give extra cultural (rather than linguistic) information, or they refer you to other articles.



Photo by Ikiwaner

NOT-SO-CARNIVOROUS CROCS⁷

Research from the **US Fish and Wildlife Service** in Charleston, South Carolina, has confirmed decades of anecdotal reports: over half the existing crocodilian species supplement their diet with fruit. It seems that at least 13 of the 23 species of crocodiles and alligators in the world today eat fruit as well as meat.

¹**warning** (adj.) - alarm

²**to bang** - beat, hit

³**to pick up** - receive

⁴**to relay** - resent

⁵**garbled** - incoherent, meaningless

⁶**Chinese whispers** (UK English) - broken telephone (US English)

⁷**croc** - (colloquial) crocodile

⁸**full moon** - when the complete disc of the moon is visible

(associated with werewolves)

⁹**meanwhile** - at the same time

¹⁰**raid** - surprise attack

¹¹**cropland** - arable farms

¹²**farmer** - agriculturalist

¹³**more lightly** - less deeply

¹⁴**signature whistle** - high-frequency sound that identifies an individual

¹⁵**acquaintance** - known individual, (in this case) friend

stand that darkness lowers **farmers**¹². Or perhaps they less and **more lightly**¹³ whe

MY NAME

Dolphins have a **signature** identify themselves and to i hear a familiar whistle they **acquaintance**¹⁵, which they whistle. Moreover, a study fr **cago** has now found that do **signature whistles**¹⁴ after gesting they have the best r



2

¹**self-confidence** - self-assurance (opposite of 'self-doubt', 'hesitancy')

²**to stresssth.** - emphasize, underline

PHONEMIC SYMBOLS

Here are the phonemic symbols that we use which might cause you problems.

Consonants

/tʃ/ as in **church**, **watch**

/ʃ/ as in **wash**, **sure**, **action**

/dʒ/ as in **judge**, **gesture**

/z/ as in **measure**, **vision**

/j/ as in **yes**

/θ/ as in **thick**, **path**

/ð/ as in **this**, **breathe**

/ŋ/ as in **sing**

Pure Vowels

/æ/ as in **cat**

/ʌ/ as in **cut**

/ə/ as in **occur**, **supply**,

aroma

/ɜː/ as in **first**, **turn**, **earn**

/ɔː/ as in **court**, **warn**

Diphthongs

/iə/ as in **ear**, **here**

/eə/ as in **air**, **there**

CURRENT AFFAIRS

This section of the magazine offers short news stories organized thematically:

- 7 News**
- anecdotes from around the world.
- 8 Politics News**
- the secret policemen's balls-up
- 9 Language News**
- new words, new usages and how English is changing
- 10 Science News**
- food and health
- 11 Science News**
- foot and mouth stories
- 12 Technology News**
- stories about machines and us
Exercise 2
-
- 13 Economics**
- typewriters and typesetting
- 14 Economics**
- why women earn less
- 15 Economics**
- women: a good investment in human capital
Exercises 10, 24
-
- 16 Psychology: what is psychoanalysis?**
- more than just talking cures
Exercise 8

SPEAKING & LISTENING EXTENSION

- 7 Watch:** in case you think we made the McWeddings up:
<http://goo.gl/wcuyPy>
-
- 8 Watch:** Mark Kennedy tells his own story at:
<http://goo.gl/Vi3vdz>
-
- 10 Speak:** do you agree that you should eat less fish out of solidarity with future generations and people in developing countries?
-
- 12 Watch:** a short report on the 'fit desks' in use in Nashville:
<http://goo.gl/FG325R>
- Speak:** would you support the introduction of 'fit desks' in your country?
-
- 16 Watch:** a series of psychotherapists give bite-size definitions of psychoanalysis at:
<http://goo.gl/q5FbHi>

MODEST WEDDINGS MAKE LASTING¹ MARRIAGES

A study by economists from **Emory University** in Atlanta, Georgia, has found that the **success rate**² for marriages is inversely proportional to how much is spent on their wedding. Couples who spent over \$20,000 on their nuptials **were 3.5 times more likely to**³ **split up**⁴ than those who spent under \$10,000.

So, if you want to guarantee that your marriage will **last**⁵ forever and you will live happily ever after, why not have a McWedding? OK, it's *reductio ad absurdum* but for \$1,250 McDonald's in Hong Kong offers a wedding for 50 people including invitations and cake.

NATIONAL PRIDE

Boris Johnson, **mayor**⁶ of London and possible future Prime Minister, recently told the following anecdote about Britain's most famous PM. "One February morning Churchill was told that one of his ministers had been caught in a 'compromising position'. "Did I hear you correctly - that **so-and-so**⁷ has **been caught**⁸ with a **guardsman**⁹?", he asked. "In Hyde Park? On a **park bench**¹⁰? At three o'clock in the morning?" Churchill **took a puff on**¹¹ his cigar, "In this weather?! Good God, man, it makes you **proud**¹² to be British!"



Winston Churchill by David Low

STILL TWO NATIONS

75% of **Caucasian**¹³ Americans have an all-white social network. Only 16% of white Americans believe that black people **face**¹⁴ significant discrimination (compared to 56% of African Americans). The median black person earns **roughly**¹⁵ half of the median white person in the USA.



NORMAL

I **have a bit of a thing about**¹⁶ the word 'normal'. It is a **weasel word**¹⁷ that can mean anything from 'what the majority do' to 'what I am comfortable with'. I read about an excellent illustration of the word's tendentiousness the other day in *The Guardian*. Len Parkes wrote, "When buying Christmas **stamps**¹⁸ at the post office this week I was asked: "Do you want religious ones or normal ones?" I **rest my case**¹⁹.

¹**lasting** - enduring, permanent

²**success rate** - (in this case) durability, permanence

³**were more likely to** - had a greater probability of + -ing

⁴**to split up** (split-split-split) - separate

⁵**to last** - endure, survive, continue

⁶**mayor** /meə/ - municipal leader

⁷**so-and-so** - a specific person

(whose **name** has been omitted)

⁸**to catch** (catch-caught-caught) - (in this case) discover

⁹**guardsman** - soldier in the regiment of Guards

¹⁰**park bench** -

¹¹**to take a puff /puff/ on** (take -took-taken) - inhale on

¹²**proud** - profoundly satisfied

¹³**Caucasian** - white

¹⁴**to face** - suffer



¹⁵**roughly** - approximately

¹⁶**to have a bit of a thing about** (have-had-had) - have a strong (and somewhat obsessive) dislike of

¹⁷**weasel word** - tententiously ambiguous term

¹⁸**stamp** -

¹⁹**I rest my case** - that example is sufficient proof of my assertion



THE SECRET POLICEMEN'S BALLS-UP¹

The real danger **lies**² not in what terrorism inflicts, but in what it provokes.

Martin Amis

The terrorism of Jihadists and drug-traffickers may require 'special powers' and **bending**³ the law but we must ensure that the security services are not **allowed to**⁴ **run amok**⁵. That is clearly what has happened in Britain in recent years.

FLASH

The first case of **gross**⁶ incompetence at the National Public Order Intelligence Unit (NPOIU) came to light in 2011. It emerged that a secret policeman called Mark Kennedy had spent seven years **undercover**⁷ in the radical **wing**⁸ of the green movement - considered 'domestic extremists' by the NPOIU. The group he had infiltrated **were involved in**⁹ direct action - **chaining themselves to**¹⁰ nuclear power stations **and the like**¹¹ - but **hardly**¹² terrorism. Then, Kennedy - known as Mark 'Flash' Stone by his activist friends - '**went native**¹³ and offered to help in the defence of six of the activists. **Eventually**¹⁴, the cases against them had to **be dropped**¹⁵. The cost of the operation was £1.75 million (€2.23 million) plus a £1 million **trial**¹⁶.

The case also revealed **scary**¹⁷ things about police tactics. Kennedy was an *agent provocateur* trying unsuccessfully to



Domestic extremists?

Photo by Les Hutchins

provoke his fellow eco-warriors to violence. On the other hand, on one occasion he was mistakenly badly **beaten**¹⁸ by the police, who caused head **wounds**¹⁹, a broken finger and a **prolapsed disc**²⁰.

BOB

In 2012 a second case appeared in the press. Mark 'Bob' Robinson (**a.k.a.**²¹ Bob Lambert) was an officer who was trying to penetrate the Animal Liberation Front. Like 'Flash', Bob had sexual relations with a series of female activists while married in his 'other' life. However, Bob had a rare genetic **disease**²², which meant that his children would inevitably die, but he didn't reveal this to the women he had children with. 12 of them are now **suing**²³ Scotland Yard. In November 2014 one woman, Jaqui, whose son by 'Bob' died, **was awarded**²⁴ £425,000 damages. Jaqui feels that she has been '**raped**²⁵ by the state'. Many are now asking if the millions wasted **pursuing**²⁶ eco-warriors might have been better spent **chasing**²⁷ real terrorists.



Photo by ChrisO

¹**balls-up** - fiasco

²**to lie** (lie-lay-lain) - be, reside

³**to bend** (bend-bent-bent) - distort, manipulate

⁴**to be allowed to** - be permitted to

⁵**to run amok** /ə'mɒk/ (run-ran-run) - act in an uncontrolled way

⁶**gross** - (in this case) serious

⁷**undercover** - covertly, clandestinely

⁸**wing** - part, faction, extreme

⁹**to be involved in** - participate in

¹⁰**to chain oneself to** -

¹¹**and the like** - etc.

¹²**hardly** - not really

¹³**to go native** (go-went-gone) - adopt the views of the people you are expected to oppress.

(originally a colonial expression)

¹⁴**eventually** - (false friend) in the end

¹⁵**to drop** - (in this case) abandon

¹⁶**trial** - judicial process

¹⁷**scary** - frightening



¹⁸**to beat sb.** (beat-beat-beaten) - assault

¹⁹**wound** - lesion

²⁰**prolapsed disc** - displacement of a cartilaginous disc between the vertebrae

²¹**a.k.a.** - also known as

²²**disease** - illness, sickness

²³**to sue** - take legal action against

²⁴**to award** - grant, give

²⁵**to rape** - sexually assault

²⁶**to pursue** - persecute, try to catch

²⁷**to chase** - pursue²⁶, hunt



Isis

THE GODDESS OF TERRORISM?

All my life 'Isis' /'aɪsɪs/ was the pompous way of referring to the Thames in Oxford. All my wife's life 'Isis' was a favourite Egyptian goddess, protector of children and the **downtrodden**¹. Then, Islamic State (in Iraq and Syria) came along and chose a supremely inappropriate acronym. Now everyone in the West seems to be accepting the new implications of the name and **giving up**². A Belgian chocolate manufacturer has changed its name from 'Isis' to **avoid**³ jihadist associations. There are plans to kill off the Crawley's **mutt**⁴ in the TV series *Downton Abbey* because its name is 'Isis'. However, a couple in Australia who eight years ago **named** their daughter 'Isis' **after**⁵ the Egyptian goddess have decided to **take a stand**⁶; they are asking the media to call the Jihadist group 'Islamic State' or '**ISIL**'⁷.

LITIGIOUS LANGUAGE

Dov Seidman, a management guru and author of *How: Why How We Do Anything Means Everything* is **suing**⁸ a yoghurt firm, Chobani, because he says they infringed his **trademark**⁹ by using 'How' in their slogan 'How **Matters**'¹⁰. Dov says, "It is not primarily a legal fight. It's a moral fight. It's a 'how' fight." Why, Dov, why?

¹**downtrodden** - oppressed
²**to give up** (give-gave-given) - capitulate
³**to avoid** - not have, circumvent
⁴**mutt** - (informal) dog
⁵**to name sb. after X** (UK English) - name sb. for X (US English), give sb. X's name to honour X

⁶**to take a stand** (take-took-taken) - resist
⁷**ISIL** - Islamic State in Iraq and the Levant
⁸**to sue sb.** - take legal action against sb.
⁹**trademark** - commercial name
¹⁰**to matter** - be important
¹¹**to photobomb** - intrude into the background of a

WORDS OF THE YEAR

According to Collins the 'word of the year' for 2014 is '**photobomb**'¹¹. However, Chambers **claims**¹² it's '**overshare**'¹³.

THE CELTIC FRINGE¹⁴ MYSTERY

One of the great linguistic mysteries - in the Anglosphere at least - is the marginal influence of the Celtic languages of the British Isles on English. **For instance**¹⁵, English and Cornish coexisted in Britain for over a thousand years **yet**¹⁶ Cornish contributed no words to **everyday English**¹⁷. It was recently announced that Cornish contributed a total of 40 words to English - none of which most native speakers will have ever heard. Examples given include wrasse (= a type of fish), oggy (= a Cornish **pasty**¹⁸) and fogou (= a house **dug**¹⁹ in the earth). To put that in perspective, Hawaiian, Swahili and Occitan have all given English more vocabulary. The situation with the other Celtic languages - Irish, Scots Gaelic and Welsh is similar, though less extreme.



An oggy (= a Cornish pasty)

Photo by Kicior99

photograph without the subject's knowledge
¹²**to claim** - say, declare
¹³**to overshare** - reveal too much about one's personal life with inappropriate details
¹⁴**Celtic Fringe** - the traditionally Celtic-speaking areas to the west and north of the British Isles (Cornwall, Wales, the Scottish

Highlands and Ireland)
¹⁵**for instance** - for example
¹⁶**yet** - but, however
¹⁷**everyday English** - quotidian English, the words commonly used by Anglos
¹⁸**pasty** - meat-filled pastry
¹⁹**dug** - excavated



Photo by Marina Carresi

PASTA: BETTER BAKED

We all love pasta but, unfortunately, it's **pretty**¹ unhealthy. The reason is that it is a simple carbohydrate that quickly breaks down into sugars in our **guts**². This means that it causes a **spike**³ in insulin levels and it also makes you fat. Now research from the **University of Surrey** has found that cooking pasta, **letting**⁴ it cool down and then reheating it reduced these **drawbacks**⁵ by 50%. Reheated pasta - **for instance**⁶, in **oven-baked**⁷ dishes like macaroni cheese or lasagne - becomes a 'resistant **starch**'⁸ that acts more like a fibre when absorbed in our digestive systems.

FISH: OFF THE MENU

We are constantly being told to eat more fish - 280g per week is the current recommendation. However, fish stocks have **plummeted**⁹ since the 1970s and the world only produces 180g of fish per person (of wild or farmed fish). Even this is only possible as a result of catastrophic **depletion**¹⁰. For example, world stocks of freshwater fish have fallen 76% since 1974, according to the **World Wildlife Fund** (WWF). What are the implications? Well, by **encouraging**¹¹ consumers to eat fish what is **actually**¹² happening is that Westerners are monopolizing fish consumption to the detriment of the rest of the world and

their future generations. Europe imports 60% of its fish while the USA imports 86%, despite the fact that fish is more urgently needed as a **source of**¹³ protein in other parts of the world.

NO SMELLS SPELLS DEATH

Notice those kitchen aromas? No? Well, maybe you should **draw up**¹⁴ a **will**¹⁵. A study **involving**¹⁶ 3,000 people aged between 55 and 85 **carried out**¹⁷ by the **University of Chicago** has found that a diminished sense of smell could be a significant indicator that an individual is going to die **within**¹⁸ the next five years. Once other factors like socio-economic status, sex and age had **been accounted for**¹⁹, the researchers found that a failing sense of smell tripled the risk of death.



Photo by Inma Isla

- ¹**pretty** (adv.) - reasonably, quite
- ²**gut** - digestive tract
- ³**spike** - pronounced increase in magnitude
- ⁴**to let sth.** (let-let-let) - allow sth. to
- ⁵**drawback** - disadvantage
- ⁶**for instance** - for example
- ⁷**oven-baked** - cooked inside the

- ⁸**starch** - a polysaccharide which functions as a carbohydrate **store** (typically found in cereals and potatoes)



- ⁹**to plummet** - decline dramatically, crash
- ¹⁰**depletion** /də'pli:ʃən/ - decline in numbers
- ¹¹**to encourage** - urge, incite
- ¹²**actually** - (false friend) in fact
- ¹³**source of** - way to obtain
- ¹⁴**to draw up** (draw-drew-drawn) - prepare

- ¹⁵**will** - testament
- ¹⁶**involving** - with the participation of
- ¹⁷**to carry out** - perform, undertake
- ¹⁸**within** - (in this case) in
- ¹⁹**to account for sth.** - take sth. into consideration

ANCIENTS STUCK TO THEIR GUMS¹

A study of 300 **skulls**² from around 400CE **dug up**³ in Dorset, England, has revealed that Britons at the **dawn**⁴ of the Dark Ages had healthier gums than today's inhabitants of the UK. The Roman Britons didn't **brush** their **teeth**⁵ and had little idea about oral hygiene. Even so, only 5% suffered from severe gum disease compared to 15-30% of modern Britons who have **acute**⁶ periodontitis. The researchers from **King's College**, London, concluded that poor dental care was only one factor in **gum disease**⁷ - smoking and to a lesser extent diabetes can cause chronic periodontitis and **ultimately**⁸ the loss of teeth.

WALKING CURES⁹

A study from **Boston University** involving 1,800 people has shown that walking is the best treatment for osteoarthritis. Those who walked between three and five kilometres daily **were much more likely to be**¹⁰ mobile two years later than those who **lead**¹¹ more sedentary lives. Ideally, sufferers should walk in trainers and use a **stick**¹² to reduce pain.



Photo by Erik van Leeuwen



Photo by Marina Carresi

GUM-RUNNERS¹³

A **survey**¹⁴ of athletes at the 2012 London Olympics found that 75% suffered from **gum disease**⁷. Now a study from the **University of Heidelberg** has **found out**¹⁵ why - and no it's not because of all that Red Bull and Gatorade /geitæreid/. Vigorous exercise causes athletes to produce less saliva and the **spittle**¹⁶ they **do produce**¹⁷ is less acidic. Saliva protects **tooth enamel**¹⁸ from plaque. The researchers found a direct correlation between the number of hours training and the number of cavities. Of course, the conclusion is not that you should become a **couch potato**¹⁹ in the interests of your teeth, but that athletes need to take special care of their oral hygiene.

¹**gums** - 
Wordplay: snowclone on 'stuck to their gums'

(= continued to do what you know is right)

²**skull** - cranium (+ mandible)

³**to dig sth. up** (dig-dug-dug) - excavate

⁴**dawn** - (metaphorical) beginning, start

⁵**to brush one's teeth** - 



⁶**acute** - severe

⁷**gum disease** - periodontitis

⁸**ultimately** - (false friend) in the final analysis



⁹**wordplay: snowclone on 'talking cure'** (= psychotherapy)

¹⁰**were much more likely to be** - had a much greater probability of being

¹¹**to lead** (lead-led-led) - (in this case) have

¹²(**walking**) **stick** - 

¹³**wordplay: snowclone on 'gun-runners'** (= arms traffickers)

¹⁴**survey** - study

¹⁵**to find out** (find-found-found) - discover, determine

¹⁶**spittle** - saliva

¹⁷**do produce** - (emphatic) produce

¹⁸**tooth enamel** /i'neiməl/ - hard glossy substance that covers the crown of a tooth

¹⁹**couch potato** - sb. who takes no physical exercise, is lethargic and watches a lot of television



Photo by Leonardo L. Carresi

INGCOMMUNICADO

According to **Prof.**¹ Peter Conrad (in reference to epistolary novels), sending letters is a reflex of [the characters'] incapacity to communicate". What was true of 18th-century fictional characters has become a reality. John Tilsiter humorously illustrated this point recently in *The Daily Telegraph*: "My internet **went down**² for about five minutes the other day, so I **headed**³ downstairs and spoke to my family. They seemed like nice people."

Indeed⁴, a recent **poll**⁵ of **baby boomers**⁶ in Britain concluded that more of them derive **self-confidence**⁷ from the number of 'friends' they have on social media than from anything they have done in the real world. 29% of 49 to 68-year-olds said that their friends count was their key indicator of **self-confidence**⁷. By comparison, only 25% of **Millennials**⁸ gave that response.

MESSAGES FROM THE AFTERLIFE

Three years ago, a family from South Tyneside who were **keen**⁹ texters decided to **bury**¹⁰ their grandmother with her cellphone. They found it comforting to text her explaining what they **were up to**¹¹ and how they were feeling. That was until the **deceased**¹² granny, Lesley Emerson, recently texted back saying, "I'm **watching over**¹³

you, and it's all going to get better." It **turned out**¹⁴ that the cellphone provider, O2, had sold Lesley's number to a new customer. He had begun receiving the family's messages and **assumed**¹⁵ they were **hoax**¹⁶ messages from friends, so he replied **in kind**¹⁷.

LOW-TECH PANACEA

A school in North Carolina seems to have found a **low-tech**¹⁸ solution to two of the biggest problems **facing**¹⁹ children today: obesity and poor reading **skills**²⁰. To help pupils lose weight they filled a classroom with exercise bikes and **encouraged**²¹ the schoolchildren to read while using them. Teachers soon observed that those children with deficient reading found books less frustrating and boring if they were pedaling while reading. What's more, when the children were tested for comprehension, the results showed that those kids that spent most time on the bikes **achieved**²² much better results than those who spend least on them.



One brand of the several 'fitness desks' on the market

¹**prof.** - professor, senior university academic

²**to go down** (go-went-gone) - (in this case) stop functioning

³**to head** - go

⁴**indeed** - (emphatic) in fact

⁵**poll** - study, questionnaire

⁶**baby boomer** - sb. born between 1946 and 1964

⁷**self-confidence** - self-esteem, morale, self-assurance

⁸**Millennials** - Generation Y, people aged between 18 and 33

⁹**keen** - enthusiastic

¹⁰**to bury** /'beri/ - inter, place (a cadaver) underground

¹¹**to be up to** - be doing

¹²**deceased** - dead

¹³**to watch over** - be vigilant for, protect

¹⁴**to turn out** - become clear... in the end

¹⁵**to assume** - (false friend) suppose

¹⁶**hoax** /houks/ (adj.) - prank, spoof, fraudulent

¹⁷**in kind** - in a similar way, (in this

case) participating in the apparent imposture

¹⁸**low-tech** - that uses simple technology

¹⁹**to face** - confront

²⁰**skill** - ability

²¹**to encourage** - urge, incite

²²**to achieve** - get, obtain

WOMEN'S WORK

by Douglas Jasch
douglasjasch@douglasjasch.com // @douglasjasch

When **typewriters**¹ were first **released**², employers thought that they could only be used by sophisticated and highly trained **staff**³. All early typists **therefore**⁴ were men. Once the machines became more **widespread**⁵ and employers **realized**⁶ that anyone could use them, typing soon became "woman's work". Fortunately, these archaic attitudes have changed - **or have they**⁷?

THE NOT SO 'TRADITIONAL' FAMILY

There is a common belief that the 'traditional' family consists of a father who goes to work and a mother who stays home with the children. However, this is not as 'traditional' as it may seem. In fact, it may surprise you to **learn**⁸ that the idea of the working father and housewife mother is a 20th Century phenomenon predominantly **arising**⁹ between 1940 and 1960¹⁰. In the earlier agricultural societies of the past both men and women worked and, in fact, even the children were required to work **from an early age**¹¹. The subsequent industrial revolution saw work moving away from the home. But we still find in most cases that **both parents**¹² required jobs to **make ends meet**¹³. The reason for this is that it **takes**¹⁴ a reasonably sophisticated and **wealthy**¹⁵ society to be able to **afford**¹⁶ only one **breadwinner**¹⁷ in the family.



Photo by Bundesarchiv Bild CC-BY-SA



Photo by Cheryl Rodewig

EDUCATING RITA

One of the reasons that women were kept out of **premium**¹⁸ jobs for so long is that they were excluded from education. If we examine **the world as a whole**¹⁹, about half the world's workers are in stereotypical occupations according to the *International Labour Office*. Men still dominate the heavy manual, technical and managerial **tasks**²⁰, while women are concentrated in caring and **nurturing**²¹ occupations and **support roles**²². In Europe, for example, women **mainly**²³ work in sales, **clerical positions**²⁴, personal services, as domestic helpers, and as secondary-school teachers. In fact, these **account for**²⁵ 53% of women's employment in EU member countries. By contrast, only 15% of men are employed in these sectors. Additionally, in total less than a third of all workers in the EU are female.

- ¹**typewriter** - 
- ²**to release** - distribute, produce
- ³**staff** - employees
- ⁴**therefore** - (*written*) for this reason
- ⁵**widespread** - common, frequent
- ⁶**to realise** - become aware
- ⁷**or have they?** - or perhaps they haven't

- ⁸**to learn** - (*in this case*) find out, discover
- ⁹**to arise** (arise-arose-arisen) - appear, occur
- ¹⁰**this type of family was the dominant model for the middle class since the 19th Century but it only became prevalent for most of the population in this period from an early age** - from a time in which they were very young

- ¹²**both parents** - the mother and the father
- ¹³**to make ends meet** - have enough money, earn as much as you spend
- ¹⁴**to take** (take-took-taken) - (*in this case*) require
- ¹⁵**wealthy** - rich, affluent
- ¹⁶**to afford** - (be able to) pay for
- ¹⁷**breadwinner** - salary-earner
- ¹⁸**premium** (adj.) - (*in this case*) the best
- ¹⁹**the world as a whole** - the

- world in general, the entire world
- ²⁰**task** - job
- ²¹**nurturing** - raising (= looking after) children
- ²²**support role** - job as sb's assistant/helper
- ²³**mainly** - primarily
- ²⁴**clerical positions** - office jobs, administrative posts
- ²⁵**to account for** - (*in this case*) represent

BETTER EDUCATED, WORSE PAID

by Douglas Jasch
douglasjasch@douglasjasch.com // @douglasjasch

The good news is that in more progressive countries – such as the US¹ and Sweden – women are now able to access a **wider range**² of jobs **due to**³ better education opportunities. As would be expected, girls in rich countries now do as well as boys at school, sometimes better, and **go on**⁴ to higher education in equal numbers, although often they choose different courses **based on**⁵ gender. Women now **make up**⁶ half of the law and medical students in the EU and USA. However, engineering is still predominantly **undertaken**⁷ by men and teaching by women. Importantly, of those who **go on**⁴ to do higher education there is now no difference in numbers between women who find work and men. This is a strong sign that things are **improving**⁸.

LESS PAY SAME WORK

Women all around the world still tend to be paid less than men, typically around 20-30% less for similar kinds of work (although it is difficult to define what is ‘similar’). With the lower pay usually come fewer benefits in terms of **healthcare**⁹ and retirement funds. Jobs where there are many women but few men, tend to be low-paid. This is particularly true in sales, cleaning and catering, but less true in teaching.



Photo by NASA Dimitri Gerondidakis



Photo by Caroldermoid

However, all is not bad news. **As with**¹⁰ education, **while**¹¹ pay is still lower on a global level, women’s salaries have been improving in advanced countries thanks to **equal pay and equal opportunities legislation**¹². In the USA, for example, in the last 30 years women’s **average**¹³ pay has **crept up**¹⁴ from 64% of men’s to over 80%. For the first time one in five women now earn more than their husbands. Moreover, young **childless**¹⁵ professional workers (of either sex) working full time now often get paid much the same. And **while**¹¹ women are still very under-represented in politics and in the **board room**¹⁶, they are very well represented in middle management.

CAREER - INTERRUPTED

But once women start having children, their relative pay **drops**¹⁷ substantially, and the more children they have the more their pay **falls behind**¹⁸. Heather Joshi of London’s **City University** found that women who have an interrupted **career**¹⁹ can expect to earn less than half of the **income**²⁰ in their life as those who do not. Reasons for this include the fact that the women have no income while they stay at home, but also because they will **have failed to move up**²¹ the **promotional ladder**²² during their absence, and might even have to accept a less **skilled**²³ job than the one they left.

¹**more progressive in this context refers to the labour laws and equal opportunities legislation**

²**a wider range** – a more extensive variety

³**due to** – because of

⁴**to go on** (go-went-gone) – proceed

⁵**based on** – (in this case) according to

⁶**to make up** (make-made-made) – constitute, form

⁷**to undertake** (-take/-took/-taken) – (in this case) study

⁸**to improve** – get better

⁹**healthcare** – medical treatment

¹⁰**as with** – similarly to, in a similar way to

¹¹**while** – (in this case) although, despite the fact that

¹²**equal pay and equal opportunities legislation** – laws that promote equal pay and equal opportunities for

men and women

¹³**average** (adj.) – typical

¹⁴**to creep up** (creep-crept-crept) – increase furtively

¹⁵**childless** – with no children

¹⁶**the board room** – companies’ top management

¹⁷**to drop** – fall, decrease, decline

¹⁸**to fall behind** (fall-fell-fallen) – be relatively less (in this case) than men’s pay

¹⁹**career** – (false friend) professional trajectory

²⁰**income** – salaries, earnings, pay

²¹**have failed to move up** – have not moved up

²²**promotional ladder** – company hierarchy

²³**skilled** – specialized



WHY KEEP WOMEN?

by Douglas Jasch
douglasjasch@douglasjasch.com // @douglasjasch

But the question must be asked, “Why is it a good thing to keep women in the workforce?” And the answer is **readily**¹ demonstrated where I work. I am a Senior Economist for the government of Queensland. The Australian civil service offers flexible **arrangements**² in an **attempt**³ to keep women (or more precisely the **primary carer**⁴ of the children) in the workforce. Women (or men if they are the **primary carer**⁴) receive a period of paid maternity (or paternity) **leave**⁵ **as well as**⁶ unpaid leave that, in total, **allows**⁷ a person to have a year off and their current (or equivalent) job is guaranteed. Once they **do return**⁸, they are permitted to come back part-time for **up to**⁹ four years if they wish.

The advantage is that an employee gains a **great deal of**¹⁰ experience and job-specific **expertise**¹¹ over the course of their **career**¹². My area is very busy and four women have recently gone on maternity leave. All of them are experts in their relative **fields**¹³ and the government has paid large sums of money over many years to train them. In offering the option of part-time work their **expertise**¹¹ has **stayed within**¹⁴ the organisation and is being utilised today. If managed **properly**¹⁵, everyone can benefit from flexible working arrangements for the **primary carer**⁴ in families. Both the family and the workplace are winners. In such circumstances **primary carers**⁴ usually **end up going back**¹⁶ to work full-time once their children start going to school. The old fear that many have of employing women in their late twenties and early thirties is **averted**¹⁷ as the **expertise**¹¹ of these women **stays within**¹⁴ the company.

¹**readily** - (in this case) easily, clearly

²**arrangements** - (in this case) options, conditions

³**attempt** (n.) - effort

⁴**primary carer** - person who dedicates most time to looking after a child

⁵**paternity/maternity leave** - period in which a parent stops working (to look after a child) because s/he has recently

become a parent

⁶**as well as** - together with, and

⁷**to allow** - enable, permit

⁸**do return** - (emphatic) return, (in this case) go back to work

⁹**up to** - as many as, a maximum of

¹⁰**a great deal of** - a lot of

¹¹**expertise** /eksp:'ti:z/ - specialist skills (= abilities)

¹²**career** - (false friend) professional trajectory



Photo by ShashiBellamkonda



Photo by Matthew Trinneer

WORK STILL TO BE DONE

The percentage of women in **the board room**¹⁸ has **stagnated**¹⁹ over the last decade at around 13%, despite the fact that companies in which women are well represented at the top earn higher profits and have a better return on **investment**²⁰ than those in which they are unrepresented. Women's jobs are still more precarious than men's and have been hit hard by the international economic **woes**²¹ since 2008: women's unemployment in the UK is at a 24-year high, for example. One study found that **unleashing**²² the economic potential of women in the UK would add around £23 billion to **the Exchequer**²³ - that's almost the entire cost of the National Health Service.

A SHINING EXAMPLE

In the Nordic countries, the UK and the US **almost**²⁴ half the workforce is female. **Overall**²⁵, the Nordic countries tend to be the most progressive with an increasing number of men taking **paternity leave**⁵ while the women stay at work. In Scandinavia there are also flexible part-time return-to-work programmes for women, and companies offering **childcare**²⁶ **facilities**²⁷.

¹³**field** - area, speciality

¹⁴**to stay within** - continue to work for

¹⁵**properly** - correctly, well, effectively

¹⁶**they end up going back** - they return in the end

¹⁷**to avert** - avoid, mitigate

¹⁸**the board room** - companies' top management

¹⁹**to stagnate** - stop improving

²⁰**investment** - spending money

on improving production

²¹**woes** - problems, difficulties

²²**to unleash** - free, release

²³**the Exchequer** - the UK national treasury

²⁴**almost** - nearly, just under

²⁵**overall** - in general

²⁶**childcare** - looking after children

²⁷**facilities** - provisions, amenities

WHAT IS PSYCHOANALYSIS?

by Silvia Gimeno Siehr*

PUTTING IT INTO WORDS

Psychoanalysis basically tries to understand. To understand the **underlying**¹ mental processes, such as: Why do I fear? Why am I obsessed with certain things/ideas/images? Why do I **keep seeking**² certain types of relationships? Why can I not **quit**³ smoking? It tries to put words where there are only symptoms, making conscious what is not, finding meaning.

METHODOLOGY

At first the analyst has several preliminary interviews with the patient, normally between three and five sessions; from the information the analyst **gathers**⁴, s/he will make a diagnosis and offer a specific treatment plan.

Within⁵ psychoanalysis there are several ways of working depending on the patient, their disorder and their **underlying**¹ personality structure. On the one hand, there is **the so-called**⁶ 'psychoanalytic psychotherapy', which is **held**⁷ face-to-face once or **twice**⁸ a week. On the other hand, we have psychoanalysis itself. Here, the patient lies on the couch and sessions are held three to four times a week. Often the idea of lying on the couch **scares**⁹ patients, so working face-to-face would be the initial phase. When the patient's **confidence**¹⁰ in the therapist increases, it may be possible to change from a psychoanalytic psychotherapy to psychoanalysis. Lying on the couch, with the therapist sitting behind the patient, provides the patient with more freedom to talk without having to **take into account**¹¹ the facial expression of the analyst. They can more easily associate and are able to remember things long forgotten, which **in turn**¹², provides more access to their own personal history.

¹**underlying** - fundamental, latent

²**to keep seeking** (Keep-kept-kept) - continually try to find

³**to quit sth.** (quit-quit-quit) - give sth. up, stop sth.

⁴**to gather** - collect, accumulate

⁵**within** - inside, in

⁶**the so-called** - what is called

⁷**to hold** (hold-held-held) - (*in this case*) perform, do

⁸**twice** - x2



Photo by Tellingyournameistherightway

THE BASIC RULE

The basic rule of psychoanalysis is that the patient has to say everything that goes through their mind, even though it seems that it is unimportant, **embarrassing**¹³ or unpleasant. They can talk about anything they want: about the past, present, future, fantasies, anecdotes, etc. Everything the patient says is important for the analyst, who maintains an 'unconscious listening', called floating attention. Psychoanalysis offers patients a different kind of listening; a **bias-free**¹⁴ listening, a listening that **allows**¹⁵ the therapist to hear the different levels in the patient's discourse, **beyond**¹⁶ their symptoms.

* Child-, adolescent- and adult psychotherapy in Madrid, Spain: in Spanish, German or English.
www.grupohispanoaleman.wix.com/inicio

⁹**to scare** - frighten, alarm

¹⁰**confidence** - trust

¹¹**to take into account** (take-took-taken) - take into consider-
ation, consider

¹²**in turn** - seriatim, sequentially

¹³**embarrassing** - (*false friend*) shameful, ignominious

¹⁴**bias-free** - impartial

¹⁵**to allow** - permit, enable

¹⁶**beyond** - outside, past

PSYCHOLOGY: THE HEALING PROCESS

by Silvia Gimeno Siehr*

In the **healing**¹ process, the psychoanalyst will be guiding the patient, questioning him or her, **pointing out**² contradictions, lapses and interpreting them. The psychoanalyst tells the patient what is unknown to them, but what the patient has transmitted through lapses, dreams, fantasies, etc., revealing their unconscious. This way the patient **feels relieved of**³ the **burden**⁴ **within**⁵ them.

THE THERAPIST-PATIENT RELATIONSHIP

A crucial **issue**⁶ in psychoanalysis is the relationship that **develops**⁷ between therapist and patient, called transference. Through the continuity of the sessions, the patient unconsciously recreates past and current relational aspects and their **issues**⁸. These aspects will **be collected**⁹ by the therapist, who will provide the patient with a new relational experience. These new experiences are what **lead to**¹⁰ changes in the patient. Therefore, psychoanalysis is not exclusively a 'talking cure'.



Photo by D. Sharon Pruitt

CONFUSING TERMS

The following terms are often confused:

- » **Psychiatry**: the treatment of **mental disorders**¹¹. Psychiatrists are **physicians**¹² and they apply medical therapies, so they can prescribe pharmaceutical drugs.
- » **Psychotherapy**: the treatment of mental disorders by psychological **rather than**¹³ medical means.
- » **Talking Cure**: a method of treating emotional difficulties by talking to a counsellor. Notice the assonance.

So, psychiatrists are **physicians**¹² that apply medical-therapy and psychologists are people that have studied psychology; a psychotherapist is a psychologist specialized in psychotherapy. A psychoanalyst is a psychologist or a psychiatrist who applies psychoanalysis or psychoanalytical psychotherapy!

* Child-, adolescent- and adult psychotherapy in Madrid, Spain: in Spanish, German or English.

www.grupohispanoaleman.wix.com/inicio

Photo by Jty33

¹**healing** - curative
²**to point out** - indicate
³**to be relieved of** - be alleviated of, be freed from
⁴**burden** - load, tension

⁵**within** - inside, in
⁶**issue** - question, aspect
⁷**to develop** - evolve, emerge
⁸**issue** - (in this case) conflict, problem

⁹**to collect** - gather, (in this case) register
¹⁰**to lead to** (lead-led-led) - result in, cause
¹¹**mental disorders** - mental

illnesses, psychopathologies
¹²**physician** - (false friend) medical doctor
¹³**rather than** - as opposed to

CULTURE

This section of the magazine offers...

Culture Dossier: A Celebration of Women

- 19-21 **Women in Science:** emerging from the shadows
Exercise 4
- 22-23 **Boudica:** the Warrior Queen
Exercise 11
- 24-25 **Anglo-Saxon Women:** six centuries of suffering and heroism
Exercise 16
- 26-27 **Margery Kempe:** the first English autobiography
- 28-30 **Lady Jane Grey:** the tragedy of the Nine Days' Queen
Exercise 6
- 31-33 **Witchcraft in England:** accusers and accused
Exercise 32
- 34-36 **Women Pirates** in England, Ireland, America and Asia
Exercise 23
- 37-38 **Mary Wollstonecraft:** *A Vindication of the Rights of Woman*
Exercise 12
- 39-41 **Jane Austen:** a new religion?
Exercise 3
- 42-43 **Women, Islam and the Victorians:** 19th-century Western misogyny
Exercise 22
- 44-45 **Isabella Bird:** an illness called wanderlust
Exercise 29
- 46-47 **Dorothy Parker:** the most quoted woman ever
- 48-50 **Margaret Sanger:** the mother of family planning
- 51 **Women's Humour:** what do women want in bed?
- 52-53 **Women, Religion and Society:** the return of women bishops
- 54 **Women Saints** of the British Isles
- 55-57 **Art:** did women once dominate western art?
- 58-60 **Literature:** the female ascendancy

61 SUBSCRIPTION FORM

- 62-65 **Bette Davis:** Ugly Bette?
Exercise 28
- 66-68 **Language:** insulting women
Exercise 5

SPEAKING & LISTENING EXTENSION

- 19 **Watch:** Prof. Jocelyn Bell Burnell talks about women in science:
<http://goo.gl/knS2Hp>
Speak: which professions are still male-dominated in your country? Why?
- 28 **Watch:** a discussion of the realism of Delaroché's painting of the execution of Lady Jane Grey at:
<http://goo.gl/nHfc3A>
- 37 **Watch:** an excellent eight-minute BBC discussion of the importance of Mary Wollstonecraft in political philosophy in the places where she lived at: <http://goo.gl/mR7SR9>
- 42 **Speak:** do you consider the majority Islamic attitude to women simply old-fashioned or is it somehow more pernicious than past European attitudes?
- 48 **Speak:** what has been the single most important technological advance ever for women?
- 52 **Speak:** should women have access to all positions in religious hierarchies? Will this happen in your lifetime?
- 55 **Watch:** the National Museum of Women in the Arts in Washington, D.C. is the single biggest collection of art by women in the world. Watch this revealing 30-minute documentary about the gallery - a real eye-opener:
<http://goo.gl/b7pwCa>
- 62 **Speak:** Bette Davis is considered the second greatest movie actress of all time (after Katharine Hepburn) - what qualities make a female film star truly great? Are they the same for male movie stars?

WOMEN & SCIENCE

Not Just Marie Curie

There is a self-perpetuating myth that women are not good at science. As recently as 2005 Lawrence H. Summers, the president of *Harvard University*, caused a **storm**¹ when he suggested that something in women's genes **prevented** them **from**² becoming great scientists. However, the objective facts prove that the stereotype is a lie. This article is not going to talk about Mme Curie, the proverbial exception that proves the rule, though it should be remembered that she is the only person - man or woman - to have won two Nobel Prizes.³

16 Centuries of Women in Science

There have always been women interested in analysing the workings of the natural world. **For instance**⁴, Hypatia of Alexandria (370-415) was a **highly**⁵ respected teacher of mathematics, astronomy and mechanics. She invented scientific instruments and wrote **treatises**⁶ on astronomy and geometry. Hypatia was murdered by Christian **monks**⁷.

A Mediaeval Miracle

During much of the Middle Ages and the Early Modern period women practising science were at risk of being accused of **dabbling in**⁸ **witchcraft**⁹. However, one woman, Hildegard of Bingen (1098-1179) was safe from such accusations because she was an **abbess**¹⁰. She took ten years to write her *Physica*, an encyclopaedia of natural history. The book describes fauna, flora and elements, and their medical applications. Hildegard helped to **spread**¹¹ classical and Arabic knowledge **throughout**¹² mediaeval Europe.



Margaret Cavendish



Hypatia of Alexandria

The First English Women of Science

One of the earliest English female natural philosophers was Margaret Cavendish (1623-73), the Duchess of Newcastle. She was **hugely**¹³ interested in the workings of the natural world and knew René Descartes. When the *Royal Society* was created in London to **further**¹⁴ science, Margaret insisted on **attending**¹⁵ its meetings, where she criticized the work of such eminent figures as Robert Boyle¹⁶. To **avoid**¹⁷ a repetition of such an 'aberration', women were **banned from**¹⁸ the *Royal Society* shortly afterwards.¹⁹ Incidentally, Margaret also wrote fiction and her *The Blazing World* (1666) was one of the **seminal**²⁰ works of science fiction. Cavendish was not the only 17th-century English woman of science. Her contemporary, Anne Conway (1631-79) also debated with and **promoted**²¹ many eminent **scholars**²². Leibniz described her as 'an extraordinary woman'. Her scientific friends posthumously published her book on science and philosophy.

The comic figure of the **absentminded**²³ scientist was invented by woman **playwright**²⁴ Aphra Behn in her play *The Emperor of the Moon* (1687).

¹**storm** - (in this case) controversy, offence

²**to prevent sb. from (+ -ing)** - stop sb. from (+ -ing)

³**speaking of women's genes and science, Mme Curie's genes were obviously very scientific because her daughter, Irène Joliet-Curie, also won a Nobel Prize**

⁴**for instance** - for example

⁵**highly** - (in this case) well,

much

⁶**treatise** - disquisition, essay, paper, thesis

⁷**monk** - member of a monastery

⁸**to dabble in** - practise (as an amateur)

⁹**witchcraft** - black magic

¹⁰**abbess** - woman in charge of a convent

¹¹**to spread** (spread-spread-spread) - propagate, disseminate

¹²**throughout** - in all of

¹³**hugely** - (in this case) intensely

¹⁴**to further** - promote

¹⁵**to attend** - (false friend) go to, be present at

¹⁶**Boyle (1627-91) chemist who worked on the nature of gases, acids and alkalis, specific gravity, phosphorus, etc.**

¹⁷**to avoid** - (in this case) prevent

¹⁸**to ban from** - exclude from

¹⁹**women were only allowed back into the Royal Society in 1945**

²⁰**seminal** - foundational, original, pioneering

²¹**to promote** - help, sponsor

²²**scholar** - erudite person

²³**absentminded** - forgetful, distracted

²⁴**playwright** - dramatist

WOMEN OF SCIENCE

Out and About¹ or Out of Sight²

Field-working Femmes

Jane Goodall³ (1934-) and Dian Fossey⁴ (1932-85) were not the first women naturalists to **venture**⁵ into the jungle. Maria Sibylla Merian (1647-1717) did much to found the science of entomology, the study of insects. In her forties this incredible woman left her native Germany and went to Surinam and India to discover, collect and illustrate plants and insects. Her work was so important that six species of plants, nine of butterflies and two of **beetles**⁶ were **named after her**⁷. The Czar of Russia was such an admirer that he hung a portrait of her in his study.

Behind Every Great Man...

Science has often involved the **partnership**⁸ of men and women, though the credit, historically, has almost always gone to the men. The Famous astronomer, Johannes Hevelius, worked hand-in-hand with his wife, Elizabetha (1647-93). Johannes was ready to acknowledge her **skills**⁹ commenting, 'women are definitely **just as well suited to**¹⁰ observing as men'. However, after his death, Elizabetha finished and published their work under his name only. It became the definitive map of the stars for the next 100 years. Another husband and wife team was that of Maria Winckelmann (1670-1720) and Gottfried Kirch. Though they worked together for many years, when Kirch died the Berlin Academy **refused to**¹¹ give Maria his job. Winckelmann **realized**¹² that the only way to get back into the Academy was through her son, so she prepared him. In the end, he got his father's job back, with his mother working as his 'assistant'. Later he also employed his two sisters.



Monsieur Lavoisier and his wife Marie Paulze

Similarly, Caroline Herschel (1750-1848) was a brilliant astronomer who discovered eight new comets, perfected mathematical calculations and won the admiration of astronomers all over Europe. However, Caroline insisted on portraying herself as the mere assistant to her brother William. Meanwhile, Caroline's French contemporary Marie Paulze (1758-1836) married and worked with Antoine Lavoisier to revolutionize chemistry. Marie established a new standard for scientific diagrams. It has even been argued that Mileva Maric Einstein (1875-1948), Albert's wife who he met when they were both research students, made an important contribution to his early theories.

Newtonian Women

Émilie du Châtelet (1706-49) was the first person to translate Newton's *Principia* into French. However, her work was not a mere translation but included a critical commentary and additional explanations. As a result the French version of *Principia* was more **comprehensive**¹³ and **up-to-date**¹⁴ than any **available**¹⁵ in English. Émilie's friend Voltaire said, 'she was a great man whose only fault was being a woman. A woman who translated and explained Newton... in one word, a very great man.' Another expert in Newtonian physics was Laura Bassi (1711-78). In 1776 she became Europe's first female professor (at Bologna University). However, after Laura died, the university changed the rules so that women could not **join**¹⁶ the academic staff.

¹**out and about** - active outside one's home

²**out of sight** - not visible, camouflaged

³**Goodall discovered that chimpanzees eat meat and use tools**

⁴**Fossey is the inspiration**

behind the book and film Gorillas in the Mist

⁵**to venture** - go (adventurously)

⁶**beetle** - 

⁷**to be named after her** - have names that honour her

⁸**partnership** - collaboration, working together

⁹**skill** - talent, ability

¹⁰**just as well suited to** - (emphatic) as capable of

¹¹**to refuse to** - decline to, not be prepared to

¹²**to realize** - (false friend)

become conscious

¹³**comprehensive** - (false friend) complete, thorough

¹⁴**up-to-date** - modern, modernized

¹⁵**available** - (in this case) found, published

¹⁶**to join** - become part of, enlist in

WOMEN IN SCIENCE

'Man of the Year'

Cross-Dressers¹

One way around² the restrictions on women practising science was to **pretend to be³** a man. Botanist Jeanne Baret (1740-1816) was the first woman to **sail round⁴** the world and she did it **disguised⁵** as a boy called 'Bonnefoy'. She worked with Philibert Commerson, who was collecting plants and animals for the King of France. Commerson dedicated a new genus of plant - Baretia - to her. Similarly, Sophie Germain (1776-1831) had to pretend to be a **male⁶** student to receive scientific training at the *École Polytechnique*. In 1816 she won the top prize in a competition organized by the Paris Academy of Science and became the first woman **allowed⁷** to **attend⁸** its meetings. Later Miranda Stuart (1795-1865) **rose⁹** to the top of the medical profession and to the post of Inspector General of all army hospitals by passing herself off as a man, 'James Barry'.

Computers & Dinosaurs

Ada Lovelace (1815-52) **prepared the ground for¹⁰** the development of computer programming. When electronic computers were invented in the 20th Century, instructions were **fed in¹¹** on **punched cards¹²** as Lovelace had suggested. The computer program 'ADA' was named in her honour. Meanwhile, Ada's contemporary, Mary Anning (1799-1847) revolutionized the emerging sciences of geology and palaeontology with her **fieldwork¹³**. The other great mother of modern computing was Grace Hopper (1906-92). Not only was she responsible for the term 'debug' - **remove¹⁴** programming mistakes, but she transformed programming by inventing new languages which were more like ordinary English. Grace was so important



1. Miranda Stuart 'James Barry', 2. Ada Lovelace, 3. Emmy Noether, 4. Rachel Carson, 5. Dorothy Hodgkin, 6. Rosalind Franklin

to the US Navy that she was promoted to Rear Admiral. In 1967 the Data Processing Management Association named Grace for their first 'Man-of-the-Year' award!

The 20th Century

Over the last century things have been easier for women scientists but there has **hardly¹⁵** been a **level playing field¹⁶**. Emmy Noether was described as 'a creative mathematical genius' - not by some tendentious feminist but by a creative mathematical genius, Albert Einstein. Even so, Emmy was **turned down¹⁷** when she applied to be a **lecturer¹⁸** at the end of the First World War because **former¹⁹** soldiers would be offended to 'find that they are expected to learn at the feet of a woman'. Meanwhile, Rachel Carson (1907-64) started modern environmentalism with her book *Silent Spring* (1962) and Dorothy Hodgkin (1910-94) revolutionized chemistry by discovering the structures of penicillin, Vitamin B12 and insulin. Lise Meitner (1878-1968) played a crucial role in the emergence of atomic physics, despite persecution as a German **Jew²⁰**. Rosalind Franklin (1920-58) suffered a much more personal injustice when her male colleagues refused to recognize that she had been the first person to perceive the true nature of DNA.

¹**cross-dresser** - transvestite

²**one way round** - one method for circumventing

³**pretend to be** - (*false friend*) simulate that she was

⁴**to sail (a)round** - circumnavigate

⁵**disguised** - camouflaged, dressed

⁶**male** (adj.) - ♂

⁷**to allow** - permit

⁸**to attend** - (*false friend*) go to, be present at

⁹**to rise** (rise-rose-risen) - ascend, be promoted

¹⁰**to prepare the ground for** - facilitate, pioneer

¹¹**to feed in** (feed-fed-fed) - insert, give

¹²**punched card** - piece of

hard/thick paper with holes in specific places

¹³**fieldwork** - work done outside a laboratory

¹⁴**to remove** - (*false friend*) eliminate

¹⁵**hardly** - not really

¹⁶**level playing field** - fair (= just) and equitable conditions for competition

¹⁷**to turn sb. down** - reject, not accept

¹⁸**lecturer** - (*false friend*) university teacher

¹⁹**former** - ex-

²⁰**Jew** - Jewish person, Hebrew, (*sometimes*) Israeli, (*typically*) believer in Judaism

Boudica: A Warrior-Queen

The first famous woman in the Anglo tradition.

A Traditional Childhood

Boudica¹ was born in about 30CE² into a **well-off**³ Celtic British family of noble ancestry. Celtic society was more egalitarian than Roman culture and, for example, both boys and girls learned to **handle**⁴ **weapons**⁵.

The Coming of the Romans

Roman **trading**⁶ colonies existed in Britain from the beginning of the first century CE⁷. Southern Britain was **therefore**⁸ an increasingly Romanized area waiting to be officially conquered. When Claudius replaced Caligula as Emperor in 43CE² he organized the 'invasion' as a **publicity stunt**⁹ to gain the approval of the Roman people. With the **support**¹⁰ of those tribes that were already partly Romanized, Claudius' force marched to Camulodunum (Colchester), one of the few British **settlements**¹¹ that could be called a town. Here he impressed the British with his elephants and **bribed**¹² most of the tribal leaders to declare themselves 'client-kings' of Rome.

One of the kings who had accepted Roman **gifts**¹³ in exchange for Roman **suzerainty**¹⁴ was Prasutagus, king of the Iceni tribe of present-day Norfolk. About four years later this same king became



Boudica Statue in London

Photo by Jason Halsall

Boudica's husband. Over the next few years Boudica - now a tall young woman with long red hair - **bore**¹⁵ Prasutagus two daughters.

Roman Barbarism

Meanwhile¹⁶, the Romans were gradually **tightening** their **grip**¹⁷ on Britain. In 50CE a law was introduced which **forbade**¹⁸ the British from carrying arms. Meanwhile, the Roman **procurator**¹⁹, Catus Decianus, tried to extort more and more money. In this climate of increasing tension Prasutagus suddenly died in the spring of 60CE². Prudently, his **will**²⁰ left half his **wealth**²¹ to the Romans and half to his wife and daughters. In Claudius' day²² this would probably have been enough to pacify the new **rulers**²³ of Britain. However, Catus Decianus sent in his men to **loot**²⁴ all they could from the Iceni. When Boudica **complained**²⁵ she was publicly **whipped**²⁶ and then, in front of her, her **preteen**²⁷ daughters were **raped**²⁸. A submissive Roman woman would have **disappeared into oblivion**²⁹ after this humiliation. Boudica by contrast **assembled**³⁰ the biggest army ever seen in Britain!

¹**also known incorrectly as 'Boadicea'**

²**CE** - Common Era, AD (= *anno Domini*), after **Christ**

³**well-off** - affluent, prosperous

⁴**to handle** - use, manipulate

⁵**weapons** - arms, instruments of war

⁶**trading** - commercial

⁷**i.e. from around the time of the birth of Christ**

⁸**therefore** - for this reason

⁹**publicity stunt** - strategy to

obtain the admiration of the public

¹⁰**support** - help, backing

¹¹**settlement** - community, village, urban centre

¹²**to bribe** - buy off, suborn (*formal*)

¹³**gift** - present, sth. given

¹⁴**suzerainty** - overlordship, government

¹⁵**bear sb. a child** (bear-bore-borne) - give birth to a **child** for sb.

¹⁶**meanwhile** - at the same time

¹⁷**to tighten one's grip** - increase one's control

¹⁸**to forbid** (-bid/-bade/-bidden) - ban, prohibit

¹⁹**procurator** - top tax collector

²⁰**will** (n.) - (*in this case*)

testament

²¹**wealth** - riches, treasure

²²**i.e. 17 years earlier**

²³**ruler** - master, lord

²⁴**to loot** - pillage, steal from, rob

²⁵**to complain** - protest

²⁶**to whip** - hit sb.

with a whip →

²⁷**preteen**

- pre-adolescent

²⁸**to rape** - sexually assault

²⁹**to disappear**

into oblivion

- disappear into

obscurity, stop

being relevant

³⁰**to assemble** - bring together,

collect



The Rebellion

Catus Decianus could not have chosen a worse moment to provoke a British **uprising**¹. The governor of Britain, Suetonius Gaius Paulinus was far away in northwest Wales trying to **smash**² the druids in Mona.

Boudica **led**³ her army of tens of thousands against the Roman capital in Britain, Camulodunum, and killed every man, woman and child - Roman or Briton - they found in the city in the summer of 60CE.

Petilius Cerealis, commander of the 9th Legion, **rushed**⁴ to **relieve**⁵ Camulodunum but his army was **ambushed**⁶ by Boudica's forces in a forest and 2000 Roman foot-soldiers were **slaughtered**⁷. Only the **cavalry**⁸ managed to escape.

Boudica then **set her sights on**⁹ Londinium (London). This was where Catus Decianus was but when he heard that the 9th Legion had been annihilated he **fled**¹⁰ to Gaul /gɔ:l/.

Meanwhile¹¹, Suetonius Paulinus was marching down Watling Street **towards**¹² London. He sent his **cavalry**⁸ **on ahead**¹³ and they **reached**¹⁴ the city before Boudica. However, they **realized**¹⁵ that they could not defend it against the enormous British army, so they **retreated**¹⁶ back up Watling Street to regroup with the infantry. Boudica entered London more or less unopposed and **burned** the city **to the ground**¹⁷. A **layer**¹⁸ of **cinders**¹⁹ can still be seen in the archaeological record.

News that Boudica had destroyed the two most important Roman towns **swept across**²⁰ the country and local rebellions **sprang up**²¹ everywhere. Boudica moved slowly north **in pursuit of**²² Suetonius Paulinus' army, the last focus of Roman resistance in Britain. On the way she came to Verulamium (St. Albans) the capital



Boudica and her army

of the Catuvellauni tribe, **allies**²³ of Rome. This too was completely destroyed. By this stage, Boudica's army had killed around 70,000 people. Suetonius Paulinus continued to **retreat**¹⁶ north until he found a battlefield that would **work**²⁴ to his maximum advantage. The 10,000 Romans were positioned at the end of a **narrow**²⁵ valley on high ground. This forced the British to attack in a densely packed formation. Moreover, the terrain was such that the British could not use their chariots. Using superior tactics, the Romans first **drove** Boudica's army **back**²⁶ and then massacred them. Reportedly, 80,000 Britons died that day. No one knows what happened to Boudica and her daughters. According to legend she took **poison**²⁷ shortly after her **defeat**²⁸. Quite possibly the Iceni royal family died out on the battlefield. In any case no bodies were ever found.

¹**uprising** - rebellion

²**to smash** - destroy

³**to lead** (lead-led-led) - captain, guide

⁴**to rush** - hurry, go quickly

⁵**to relieve** - save

⁶**to ambush** - attack by surprise

⁷**to slaughter** - massacre, butcher

⁸**cavalry** - horsemen, mounted soldiers

⁹**to set one's sights on**

(set-set-set) - decide to attack

¹⁰**to flee** (flee-fled-fled) - run away, escape

¹¹**meanwhile** - at the same time

¹²**towards** - in the direction of

¹³**on ahead** - in advance

¹⁴**to reach** - get to, arrive at

¹⁵**to realize** - (false friend) become aware/conscious

¹⁶**to retreat** - withdraw, retire, pull back

¹⁷**to burn swth. to the ground** - raze swth. completely

¹⁸**layer** - stratum

¹⁹**cinders** - burnt material, ashes

²⁰**to sweep across** (sweep-swept-swept) - propagate quickly across

²¹**to spring up** (spring-sprang-sprung) - appear, start

²²**in pursuit of** - following, pursuing

²³**ally** - associate, accomplice,

supporter

²⁴**to work** - (in this case) function

²⁵**narrow** - restricted, (opposite of 'wide')

²⁶**to drive sb. back** (drive-drove-driven) - force sb. to retreat¹⁶

²⁷**poison** - a venomous substance, toxin

²⁸**defeat** - loss, (opposite of 'victory')

Anglo-Saxon Women

Ask anyone to imagine an Anglo-Saxon¹ in their mind's eye² and in the vast majority of cases they'll describe a man. Yet³, 'surprisingly', over half the inhabitants of England between 450 and 1066 were women. What do we know about these Saxon sisters?

Six Centuries of Suffering

The Anglo-Saxon period was a hard time to live. Even when the Saxons weren't battling the Ancient British or being massacred by the Vikings, life was **tough**⁴. It is estimated that life-expectancy for men and women was around 30 years. Winter, especially, could be a cruel season. The chronicles tell of whole communities jumping off **cliffs**⁵ or committing cannibalism in the face of winter **starvation**⁶. **Hunger**⁷ drove others not only to sell their children but even to sell themselves into **slavery**⁸ in order to survive the winter. Part of the problem in the 9th Century was a mini-Ice Age. Not only did this devastate the **food supply**⁹ but it forced the Vikings south to pillage the British Isles and Western Europe.

Anglo-Saxon Women at Home

It would be **foolhardy**¹⁰ to suggest that all Anglo-Saxon women over six centuries were somehow similar. **For instance**¹¹, the archaeological evidence tells us that noblewomen were elaborately **buried**¹². At the other end of



Photo by Homo oecologicus

the scale one of their slave women was often killed and buried with her mistress to serve on in the afterlife. As well as murdered servant women, archaeologists often find keys in the **graves**¹³ of dead Anglo-Saxon women: the implication is that the wife was responsible for the family's home and possessions. Our Modern English word 'lady' comes from Anglo-Saxon *hloefdige* or *hlafe-ward* - the first part of which in each case is also the origin of **'loaf'**¹⁴.¹⁵ So, a *hloefdige* was not a passive Victorian lady **but rather**¹⁶ the person in charge of the **household**¹⁷'s **food supply**⁹. Marriage is described in Old English poetry as *freondscipe* (= 'friendship'), implying a free and intimate relationship between near equals.¹⁸

Anglo-Saxon women had a more prestigious place in their society than, **say**¹⁹, Ancient Greek women. In contrast to contemporary continental women, early Englishwomen could **own**²⁰ land and make accusations in court. If their husbands were captured by the enemy, they were **allowed to**²¹ take a new husband.



Photo by Peter van der Sluijs

¹**Anglo-Saxon is used in English to refer to the Germanic people who invaded Britain after 450. Their language is known as 'Anglo-Saxon' or 'Old English'. We do not use 'Anglo-Saxon' to refer to modern English-speaking cultures**

²**in one's mind's eye** - in one's imagination

³**yet** - (in this case) however,

nevertheless

⁴**tough** - (in this case) hard, difficult

⁵**cliff** - vertical face of a mountain, precipice

⁶**starvation** - hunger, dying because there is no food, famine

⁷**hunger** - starvation, famine

⁸**slavery** - captivity, servitude (opposite of 'freedom')

⁹**food supply** - provision of food

¹⁰**foolhardy** - incautious, imprudent

¹¹**for instance** - for example

¹²**to bury** - put a cadaver underground

¹³**grave** (n.) - place where a cadaver has been put underground

¹⁴**loaf** - unit of bread before it is cut

¹⁵**hloefdige means the person who makes the bread and**

hlafe-ward means the custodian of the bread

¹⁶**but rather** - (in this case) by contrast she was

¹⁷**household** - family

¹⁸**our words 'free' and 'friend' are etymologically related**

¹⁹**say** - for instance, for example

²⁰**to own** - legally possess

²¹**to be allowed to** - be permitted to

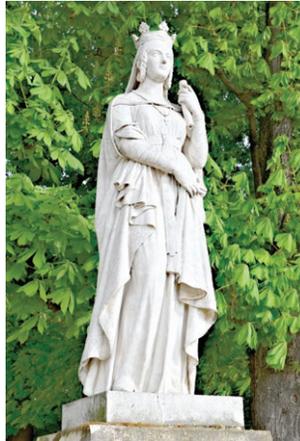
Anglo-Saxon Heroines

The First Englishwoman in History

The first individual Englishwoman to appear in the history books was mentioned by the Byzantine historian Procopius - a high-ranking official in Emperor Justinian's civil service - in his history of the Gothic Wars, which dates from the 550s. The woman in question, who is not named, **was formally betrothed to**¹ Radigis, a prince of the Varni tribe in northern Germany. However, when Hermegisclus, king of the Varni died, Radigis went back on his **engagement**² and married his young **Frankish**³ **stepmother**⁴, Theudechild. The English princess, was not ready to accept this public insult and she **gathered**⁵ an army and **sailed across**⁶ to the mouth of the Rhine. There she **defeated**⁷ the Varni, captured Radigis and married him!

From Slave to Queen

Class is as important as gender in any culture. However, even class wasn't an **insurmountable**⁸ problem for Anglo-Saxon women. Perhaps the most extraordinary Anglo-Saxon woman was Balthild⁹. She was captured by pirates as a child and sold as a **slave**¹⁰ in Neustria, the kingdom of the western Franks. There she was bought by Erchinoald, the chief minister of king Clovis II. In Erchinoald's home Balthild came to the teenage king's attention and he decided to marry her. When Clovis II died in 657 Balthild became regent for her seven-year-old son, Clothar III. As queen she consolidated the network of monasteries in western Europe as well as the position of



Queen Balthild of Neustria



Aethelflaed, Queen of Mercia

Photo by British Library

Neustria. As regent she possibly ordered the assassination of several figures including **bishop**¹¹ Annemund of Lyons. When Clothar was old enough to take power Balthild agreed (under pressure) to retire to the great teaching convent at Chelles in England, where she lived to the end of her life. She was subsequently declared a saint.

Aethelflaed the Great

Aethelflaed, daughter to King Alfred the Great, married Aethelred, king of West Mercia¹². From 907 to 915 she organized the building of a **chain**¹³ of fortified towns to defend West Mercia. As Aethelred's health failed she **took over**¹⁴ the **leadership**¹⁵ of the army against the Danes. The king died in 911 and it was Aethelflaed who led the West Mercians to capture Derby in 917 and Leicester in 918. In fact, she was one of England's great military leaders.

Churchwomen

One area in which women could **achieve**¹⁶ great power and influence was in the Church. Noblewomen such as Hild of Whitby, Etheldreda of Ely, Werburga of Chester and Mildred of Thanet were **abbesses**¹⁷ of great double monasteries for both men and women¹⁸.

¹ **to be betrothed** /bi'trouðd/ **to** - be engaged to, have promised to marry

² **engagement** - betrothal, promise to marry

³ **Frankish** - referring to the Franks (= a Germanic tribe who occupied France)

⁴ **stepmother** - the wife of one's father who is not one's

biological mother

⁵ **to gather** - bring together, collect, assemble

⁶ **to sail across** - cross in a ship

⁷ **to defeat** - beat, be victorious over, triumph over

⁸ **insurmountable** - insuperable, impossible

⁹ **also spelt 'Baldhild' and 'Bathild'**

¹⁰ **slave** - captive, servant who is not free

¹¹ **bishop** - 

¹² **the area around what is now Birmingham**

¹³ **chain** - (in this case) connected series



¹⁴ **to take over** (take-took-taken) - take control of

¹⁵ **leadership** - captaincy, control

¹⁶ **to achieve** - gain, obtain

¹⁷ **abbess** - female equivalent of an 'abbot'

¹⁸ **the institutions were for both but monks and nuns lived in separate parts**

Margery Kempe: England's First Autobiographer

Early Life

Margery Kempe was born into a prosperous family in the important **trading**¹ town and port of King's Lynn. The town was also the port of passage for **pilgrims**² on their way to the **shrine**³ at Walsingham. Margery's father was **mayor**⁴ of the town several times and also represented Lynn in parliament. When Margery was 20 she married John Kempe, a **cloth-maker**⁵. The birth of the Kempes' first child was difficult and Margery suffered from what modern medicine would call a "postpartum psychosis"⁶; most people then simply concluded that she had **gone mad**⁷. Margery was out of her mind for around eight months during which time she saw devils and Christ **chastising**⁸ her for her **pride**⁹. During this time Margery **bit**¹⁰ her own hand so hard that the marks **remained**¹¹ for the rest of her life. However, once she had recovered her senses, Margery went back to wearing fashionable clothes (apparently one of her worst **sins**¹²!).



St.Margaret's church in King's Lynn

Businesswoman

The next 20 years of Margery's life were **pretty**¹³ normal for a rich English wife at the time. Her **main**¹⁴ function was to have children/**heirs**¹⁵ and she was exceedingly good at this - she had 14! However, Margery does not seem to have been entirely satisfied as a 'baby-maker' and in the first decade of the 15th Century she went into business - first as a **brewer**¹⁶. For four years she brewed the best beer in Bishop's Lynn until it suddenly lost its **froth**¹⁷ - causing Margery to lose a lot of money.

A Message from God

Business catastrophe **led to**¹⁸ new visions but this time Margery opted for a radical change of lifestyle. In 1413 she **gave up**¹⁹ eating meat and started wearing a **hair-shirt**²⁰ under her clothes. She also told her **long-suffering**²¹ husband that she had decided to **give up**²² sex. One day she was **praying**²³ in St. Margaret's Church when a **beam**²⁴ fell from the roof and **struck**²⁵ her. Most of the Kempes' neighbours concluded that God wanted to **punish**²⁶ Margery but she decided that it was a miracle because the block of wood didn't **actually**²⁷ kill her!

¹**trading** (adj.) - commercial

²**pilgrim** - sb. who goes on a pilgrimage (= religious journey to a shrine³)

³**shrine** - holy place, religiously-significant location

⁴**mayor** /meə/ - municipal leader

⁵**cloth-maker** - manufacturer of textiles

⁶**a much severer condition than common post-natal depression that includes delirium**

⁷**to go mad** (go-went-gone) - lose one's mind, go crazy

⁸**to chastise** - chide, reprimand

⁹**pride** - being proud, arrogance, self-importance

¹⁰**to bite** (bite-bit-bitten) - attack with one's teeth

¹¹**to remain** - (in this case) continue to be visible

¹²**sin** - (in religion) immoral act, transgression

¹³**pretty** (adv.) - (in this case) reasonably

¹⁴**main** - principal

¹⁵**heir** /eə/ - sb. who inherits

¹⁶**brewer** - sb. who makes beer

¹⁷**froth** - foam, spume, bubbles

¹⁸**to lead to** (lead-led-led) - cause, provoke

¹⁹**to give sth. up** - stop doing sth.

²⁰**hair-shirt** - shirt made of uncomfortable textile worn by some very religious people as a type of self-punishment

²¹**long-suffering** - patient, stoical

²²**to give up** (give-gave-given) - (in this case) stop having

²³**praying** - asking God for help

²⁴**beam** - long piece of wood that is placed horizontally to form part of the structure of a roof

²⁵**to strike** (strike-struck-struck) - hit, knock against, hurt

²⁶**to punish** - discipline, castigate (formal)

²⁷**actually** - (false friend) in fact

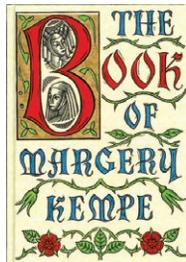
The Most Travelled Woman of the Middle Ages

In the 1410s Margery Kempe began **weeping**¹ uncontrollably. Hysterical **sobbing**² was a relatively common expression of religious devotion in the Middle Ages. However, Margery's weeping was very alarming for her contemporaries.

Margery's father died in 1413. This seems to have **weakened**³ Margery's **ties**⁴ to Lynn and started her off on two decades of pilgrimages that were to make her the most travelled woman of her age. First she went to York with her husband John. Unfortunately, he was still trying to talk his wife into having sex with him, so he was not her ideal pilgrimage **partner**⁵. In the end Margery agreed to eat meat on Friday and John accepted that his wife would be celibate (not **the fairest**⁶ of compromises, perhaps!).

Wanderlust

Margery then **set off**⁷ for Jerusalem via Canterbury. However, when Margery went to see Archbishop Thomas Arundel he was completely **unnerved**⁸ by her **sobbing**² and the local people **threatened to**⁹ burn her as a heretic. John Kempe was so embarrassed by his wife that he abandoned her, and she forgot the name of the **inn**¹⁰ they were staying at and got lost. The couple **made up**¹¹ but Margery went to the Holy Land without her



husband. She **set off**¹² with a group of pilgrims but they spent much of the journey trying to lose her because they were so embarrassed by her weeping! Margery returned from Rome to Lynn in May 1415.

However, Margery now had **wanderlust**¹³ and was **keen to**¹⁴ be off on another pilgrimage. She had problems finding a ship to take her to Europe because **almost**¹⁵ every **vessel**¹⁶ available had been requisitioned by Henry V for a military campaign in France. However, in July 1417 Margery finally found a boat that would take her from Bristol to Santiago de Compostela. After a **brief**¹⁷ visit she returned to England in early August.

Her Last Twenty Years

45-year-old Margery seems to have **settled down**¹⁸ a bit after 1418. However, around 1424 John Kempe had a serious fall and was **crippled**¹⁹. Margery cared for him for the next seven years until he died around 1431. Almost 60, Margery was now free to travel again. When her son died shortly after her husband, Margery decided to accompany her German **daughter-in-law**²⁰ back to the continent. In April 1433 they left Ipswich and Margery visited Norway, Danzig²¹ and Aachen in Germany.

Margery died in Lynn in 1439, having dictated her autobiography to a **monk**²². She was undoubtedly the most **remarkable**²³ English woman of her age.

¹to weep (weep-wept-wept) - cry, shed tears, wail

²sobbing - crying, weeping, wailing

³to weaken - make weaker, debilitate

⁴ties (n.) - (in this case) links, connections

⁵partner - companion

⁶the fairest - the most just, the most equitable

⁷to set off (set-set-set) - start a journey

⁸to be unnerved - be alarmed, be agitated

⁹to threaten to do sth. - promise to do sth. in an intimidating way

¹⁰inn - pub with a few bedrooms

¹¹to make up (make-made-made) - be reconciled

¹²to set off (set-set-set) - start a

journey

¹³wanderlust - a strong desire to travel

¹⁴to be keen to - be eager to, be enthusiastic to

¹⁵almost - nearly, practically

¹⁶vessel - ship

¹⁷brief - short, quick

¹⁸to settle down - calm down, quieten down

¹⁹to be crippled - become

handicapped

²⁰one's daughter-in-law - the wife of one's son

²¹modern-day Gdansk in Poland

²²monk - religious man who lives in a monastery

²³remarkable - extraordinary, exceptional

Lady Jane Grey

by Colman Keane

A Prodigy & a Protestant

Jane Grey, together with Anne Boleyn, is undoubtedly one of the most fascinating women in Tudor history. Not surprisingly, her story has **featured**¹ prominently in historical literature and has **made its way into**² one of the great masterpieces of French 19th-century art, **namely**³ that extraordinarily **poignant**⁴ work by Paul Delaroche, *Execution of Lady Jane Grey*.

The great-granddaughter of the founder of the Tudor dynasty, Henry VII, Jane was born in Bradgate in the spring of 1537⁵. She was the eldest child of Frances Brandon - Henry VIII's royal **niece**⁶ - and Henry Grey, the Marquis of Dorset, a man of remarkable culture and learning and a leading figure in the Protestant faction at court. Jane received an exquisite humanist education "based on the model Sir Thomas Moore⁷ had **devised**⁸ for his eldest daughter"⁹. As a **second cousin**¹⁰ to Edward VI and his half-sisters Mary¹¹ and Elizabeth¹², the **petite**¹³, red-haired Jane was close to the court. By the age of 13 she was, according to the Elizabethan **scholar**¹⁴ Roger Ascham, reading Plato's *Phaedo* in Greek

while the rest of the **household**¹⁵ **went hunting**¹⁶. By then, under the watchful eye of her tutor John Aylmer, she had **attained**¹⁷ a superb knowledge of Latin, an excellent **grounding**¹⁸ in Greek and had **taken up**¹⁹ Hebrew in order to be able to read the Old and New Testaments in the original. By the age of 12, Jane had moved to Seymour Place where she became close to Catherine Parr²⁰ who further **nurtured**²¹ Jane's religious belief through her own example. **Indeed**²², such were her intense Protestant convictions that the teenage Jane, who as a child had been **attired**²³ in the finest of clothes, began to dress **plainly**²⁴ and when her **staunchly**²⁵ Catholic cousin Mary sent her a sumptuous dress, she **promptly**²⁶ had it sent back considering it "**a shame**²⁷ to follow my Lady Mary against God's word".



The Execution of Lady Jane by Paul Delaroche - National Gallery London

¹**to feature** - be included

²**to make its way into** (make-made-made) - be included

³**namely** - that is, i.e. (*id est*)

⁴**poignant** - moving, emotive

⁵**I have been guided as regards the season of her birth by the noted historian John Guy**

⁶**niece** - the daughter of one's brother or sister

⁷**a saint and martyr for Roman Catholics**

⁸**to devise** - formulate, conceive

⁹**John Guy, The Story of Lady Jane Grey.**

¹⁰**second cousin** - (*in this case*) daughter of their father's first cousin, (i.e. Henry VIII's sister's granddaughter)

¹¹**later Queen Mary Tudor (a.k.a. 'Bloody Mary')**

¹²**later Queen Elizabeth I**

¹³**petite** - dainty, attractively small

¹⁴**scholar** - (*false friend*) erudite person

¹⁵**household** - family

¹⁶**to go hunting** (go-went-gone) - pursue and kill animals as a sport

¹⁷**to attain** - achieve, acquire

¹⁸**grounding** - basic instruction

¹⁹**to take sth. up** (take-took-taken) - start to learn

²⁰**Catherine Parr was Henry VIII's last wife and a moderate but devoted Protestant**

²¹**to nurture** - promote, foment

²²**indeed** - (*emphatic*) in fact

²³**to attire** - dress, clothe

²⁴**plainly** - in a simple undorned way

²⁵**staunchly** - resolutely

²⁶**promptly** - immediately

²⁷**a shame** - (*in this case*) inappropriate, sinful, wrong

Marry in Haste, Repent at Leisure¹



Lord Guildford Dudley - The Public Catalogue Foundation



Lady Jane Grey - National Portrait Gallery London

The In-laws² from Hell

In 1553, 15-year-old Jane was married **in haste**³ to the son of the Duke of Northumberland, Guildford Dudley, in a **match**⁴ **arranged**⁵ by the Duke himself. By the spring of that same year, King Edward⁶ had fallen seriously ill. **Ravaged**⁷ by tuberculosis, the young king decided that his successor should be Jane not only because she was Protestant, but also because he trusted her husband's family. When Edward VI **passed away**⁸ on 6th July, Jane discovered that he had **bequeathed**⁹ her his throne **in place of**¹⁰ Mary Tudor. Although she **wept**¹¹

feeling that Mary was the rightful **claimant**¹², she still **regarded herself as**¹³ born to **lead**¹⁴ the Protestant cause and **prayed that God should**¹⁵ "**grant**¹⁶ me such **grace**¹⁷ as to **enable**¹⁸ me to govern this Kingdom with its approbation and to his glory". Despite the fact that her mother¹⁹ was furious at having been passed over, the family **rallied behind**²⁰ Jane and she was officially proclaimed queen in a ceremony held at the Tower of London on 10th July. What Jane **had failed to grasp**²¹ until that moment was not only that her **father-in-law**²² as president of the **Privy Council**²³ would take effective control of the country, but that her new husband Guildford (whom she **hardly**²⁴ knew) would demand to be king. **Indeed**²⁵, a furious **row**²⁶ **broke out**²⁷ between Jane and her spouse in the Tower after Jane was **handed**²⁸ **the crown jewels**²⁹. She told Guildford he could only be a duke **on**³⁰ which he refused to sleep with her any longer.

Jane the Queen

¹ **marry in haste, repent at leisure** - (*proverb*) if you **marry** impetuously, you may **regret** doing so for a **long time**

² **in-laws** - family of one's **spouse**

³ **in haste** /heist/ - precipitously

⁴ **match** - (*in this case*) **marriage**

⁵ **to arrange** - organize

⁶ **Edward VI, Henry VIII's 15-year-old son**

⁷ **ravaged by** - devastated by, suffering from

⁸ **to pass away** - die

⁹ **to bequeath** - leave (*in inheritance*)

¹⁰ **in place of** - instead of, rather than, as opposed to

¹¹ **to weep** (weep-weep-weep) - cry, shed tears

¹² **claimant** - pretender, candidate

¹³ **to regard oneself as** - consider oneself to be

¹⁴ **to lead** (lead-led-led) - **captain**, guide, direct

¹⁵ **prayed that God should** - asked God to

¹⁶ **to grant** - confer, give

¹⁷ **grace** - (*in this case*) divine inspiration

¹⁸ **to enable** - allow, permit

¹⁹ **Frances Brandon, daughter of Henry VIII's sister**

²⁰ **to rally behind** - support, defend

²¹ **had failed to grasp** - had not understood

²² **her father-in-law** - her husband's father (the **Duke of Northumberland**)

²³ **the Privy /privi/ Council** - committee of advisors who give the monarch **confidential** advice

²⁴ **hardly** - almost not, not really

²⁵ **indeed** - (*emphatic*) **in fact**

²⁶ **row** - **dispute**, argument

²⁷ **to break out** (break-broke-broken) **erupt**

²⁸ **to hand sb. sth.** - give sth. to sb.

²⁹ **the crown jewels** - the **crown** and other ornaments and **jewellery worn** or carried by a **sovereign on certain state occasions**

³⁰ **on** - (*in this case*) **in answer to**

The Nine Days' Queen

The Pawn¹

Jane **ruled**² until 19th July when she was **overthrown**³ by Mary and imprisoned in the Tower. She **was stripped of**⁴ the crown jewels and taken from the royal apartments to the house of William Partridge where over the succeeding months she was **vitriolic**⁵ in denouncing her **father-in-law**⁶ who "**hath**⁷ brought me and our **stock**⁸ in most miserable calamity and **misery**⁹ by his exceeding ambition". **Indeed**¹⁰, Jane was convinced that Northumberland had tried to **poison**¹¹ her. Together with Guildford, Jane was **tried**¹² for **treason**¹³ on 13th November. She **pleaded guilty**¹⁴ and was sentenced to be either **burnt at the stake**¹⁵ or decapitated.

However, Mary **was friends with**¹⁶ Frances Brandon and had no wish to kill her friend's teenage daughter; all the evidence suggests that the new Queen planned to pardon Jane once she was firmly established on the throne.

But then disaster **struck**¹⁷: Mary declared that she intended to marry Philip of Spain and a Protestant rebellion **broke out**¹⁸. Jane's father, Henry Grey, **foolishly**¹⁹ joined the revolt and when it was put down, Mary reluctantly decided that Jane was a **threat**²⁰. Her execution was fixed for 9th February, but in an effort to win a propaganda victory the Catholic Queen Mary sent John Feckenham to try to convert Jane to



Feckenham's interview with Lady Jane Grey in the Tower (Henry Pirce Bone)

Catholicism. Jane, who in her last letter to her sister Katherine wrote that "I shall **be delivered of**²¹ this corruption for I am assured, that I shall for losing of a mortal life, win an immortal life", **was unmoved**²². She was determined to become a Protestant martyr.

On 12th February 1554, the Nine Days' Queen, showing the greatest fortitude, and accompanied by two gentlewomen, carried a **prayer book**²³ in her hand as she **was led to**²⁴ the **scaffold**²⁵ at Tower Hill where she was **beheaded**²⁶, **thus**²⁷ becoming at the tender age of 17 a martyr to Protestantism. **Yet**²⁸, her death was as unnecessary as it was tragic. The teenager was the victim of a **scheming**²⁹ **father-in-law**⁶ and a **foolhardy**³⁰ father. Despite being exceptionally intelligent and a queen, at no point was she the **mistress of her own destiny**³¹.



Lady Jane Grey



¹**pawn** - (literally)

²**to rule** - reign

³**to overthrow**

(throw/threw/thrown) - **dethrone**, oust

⁴**to be stripped of sth.**

- sth. was taken from sb.

⁵**vitriolic** - rancorous

⁶**her father-in-law** - her husband's father (the **Duke of Northumberland**)

⁷**hath** - (archaic) has

⁸**stock** - (in this case) family

⁹**misery** - unhappiness, suffering

¹⁰**indeed** - (emphatic) in fact

¹¹**to poison sb.** - kill sb. with a toxic substance

¹²**to try sb.** - judicially process sb.

¹³**treason** - (in this case) the crime of conspiring to kill one's monarch

¹⁴**to plead guilty** - declare that one is responsible/ culpable

¹⁵**to be burnt at the stake** - be

executed with fire

¹⁶**to be friends with** - be a friend of

¹⁷**to strike** (strike-struck-struck) - (in this case) occur

¹⁸**to break out** (break-broke-

broken) - erupt, start

¹⁹**foolishly** - stupidly, impetuously

²⁰**threat** - danger, menace

²¹**to be delivered of** - (archaic) be freed from

²²**to be unmoved** - be resolute

²³**prayer book** - book of formulaic invocations to God

²⁴**to be led to** - be taken to

²⁵**scaffold** - place of execution

²⁶**to behead sb.** - decapitate sb.

²⁷**thus** - in this way

²⁸**yet** - (in this case) however

²⁹**scheming** - conspiring

³⁰**foolhardy** - incautious, irresponsible

³¹**to be the mistress/master of one's own destiny** - be in control of one's destiny



Witchcraft in England

Why was there an explosion in witch-hunting¹ in England between 1560 and 1660 - the age of Shakespeare and Newton?

A Century of Fear & Uncertainty

Witch-hunting¹ appeared in England as if from nowhere in the second half of the 16th Century and continued to be an important social phenomenon in the country until the Restoration². By contrast, in the previous 500 years we know of only six witch executions in England.

In late-16th and 17th-century England life was unpredictable and insecure in a way that it is impossible for modern Westerners to imagine. Life expectancy for the nobility in the 17th Century was only 29.6 years, obviously for the rest of the population it was lower. It has been estimated that 36% of children born in London died before **reaching**³ the age of six, and over half died before their sixteenth birthdays. Malnutrition, **hunger**⁴ and **diseases**⁵ such as the bubonic plague were part of everyday life, not **aberrations**⁶. Doctors were mostly **unable to**⁷ cure serious illness and



A 17th-century fire in London

in many cases **worsened**⁸ the condition. Moreover, fire was an ever-present **threat**⁹ that could ruin the few who had some financial stability in an instant. In such circumstances superstitions were much more plausible and the ordered universe of the **Enlightenment**¹⁰ was inconceivable **for most**¹¹.

The Religious Context

The religious **setting**¹² of the period **encouraged**¹³ spiritual insecurity. The idea that certain people could hurt others at a distance was accepted in the Catholic Church - the most obvious example being a papal anathema. However, the Reformation had **thrown in doubt**¹⁴ old religious certainties. Worse still, the Protestant **clergy**¹⁵ offered less protection against the **devil**¹⁶ and **evil**¹⁷ in general than the Catholic **priests**¹⁸ had done.

¹**witch-hunting** - persecuting people accused of practising black magic

²**the Restoration of the Monarchy in 1660 after the republican Commonwealth**

³**to reach** - get to, live to

⁴**hunger** - lack of food, need for food

⁵**disease** - illness, sickness

⁶**aberration** - rarity, uncommon event

⁷**to be unable to** - be incapable of (+ -ing)

⁸**to worsen** - aggravate, exacerbate

⁹**threat** - danger, risk, menace

¹⁰**the Enlightenment**

- 18th-century philosophical movement marked by a rejection of traditional social, religious, and political ideas and by an emphasis on rationalism

¹¹**for most** - for the majority of people

¹²**setting** - context

¹³**to encourage** - foster,

stimulate

¹⁴**to throw in doubt** (throw-threw-thrown) - call into question

¹⁵**clergy** - churchmen

¹⁶**the devil** - Satan /'seɪtən/

¹⁷**evil** (n.) - malevolence, malignancy

¹⁸**priest** - local religious leader

The English Persecution Compared

In total between 1559 and 1736 (when all legal references to **witchcraft**¹ as a **crime**² were **removed**³) less than 1000 people were executed for witchcraft in England. The number of Catholic martyrs in England in the same period was 264, and the English witch persecution was proportionally lower than in Scotland and in Continental Europe.

Unlike⁴ the Europeans

The focus of English **witch-hunting**⁵ was subtly different from the continental persecution. First, the English accusations focused **almost**⁶ exclusively on **harm**⁷ done to people and farm animals. English witches were **seldom**⁸ accused of interfering with the weather or of frustrating sexual



relations. More importantly, the accusation of devil worship⁹ was of secondary importance in England, the important thing was the *maleficium* - the **harm**¹⁰ done. By contrast, Continental **witch-hunting**⁵ was **mainly**¹¹ about exterminating **heresy**¹². Again, in contrast to European practice, formally the use of torture was **forbidden**¹³ in English **witch-trials**¹⁴, though 'Guantanamo-style' tactics (such as **sleep and food deprivation**¹⁵) were documented.

Popular Myths

There is **no** convincing evidence that English witches were organized in **covens**¹⁶, that they usually practised devil worship¹⁷, that they had ritual **sabbaths**¹⁸ or that there was any nostalgia for an older pre-Christian religion in the known cases of supposed **witchcraft**¹. Surprisingly, despite popular notions of witchcraft, flying¹⁹ and transforming themselves into animals were rarely mentioned at witches' trials in England. The **broomstick**²⁰ was only mentioned in one English witch-trial. **Conversely**²¹, walking **backwards**²² was more popularly associated with witches! English witches were particularly associated with having a **familiar**²³ - perhaps a black cat - but it could also be a dog, a **toad**²⁴, a rat, a **fly**²⁵, a **wasp**²⁶ or a **butterfly**²⁷!

¹**witchcraft** - (in this case) the practice of black magic

²**crime** - (false friend) felony, serious illegal act

³**to remove** - (false friend) eliminate. **The last English witch execution occurred in 1684 and the last English witch-trial took place in 1712. However, illegal lynching of supposed witches continued in Britain until the 19th Century. The last official witch execution in Scotland happened in 1727.**

⁴**unlike** - different from
⁵**witch-hunting** - persecuting people accused of practising black magic

⁶**almost** - nearly, practically

⁷**harm** (n.) - damage, destruction, loss

⁸**seldom** - rarely, only occasionally

⁹the '**covenant with the Devil**' only became a formal crime in England in 1604 - after at least half the witch executions had taken place

¹⁰**harm** - damage, hurt

¹¹**mainly** - primarily

¹²**heresy** - unorthodox religious ideas

¹³**forbidden** - prohibited

¹⁴**trial** - judicial process

¹⁵**sleep and food deprivation** - not permitting sb. to sleep or eat

¹⁶**coven** /'kʌvən/ - group of usually 13 witches

¹⁷**one of the few documented cases of organized devil-worship was the Hellfire Club. But this was founded in 1745 (after the period in question) and involved a group of aristocratic men.**

¹⁸(**black**) **Sabbath** - a midnight assembly of witches and devils for the celebration of rites and orgies

¹⁹when Jane Wenham was accused of flying in 1712 Justice (= judge) Powell amusingly commented that there was no law against flying and freed her!

²⁰**broomstick** -

²¹**conversely** - however, on the other hand

²²**backwards** - in the opposite direction from normal

²³**familiar** (n.) - demon in the form of an animal

²⁴**toad** - type of amphibian

²⁵**fly** -

²⁶**wasp** - a black and yellow insect

²⁷**butterfly** -



Witch-hunts: Accusers and Accused

Witch-hunting¹ in England was in general not orchestrated by the powerful **but rather**² a popular movement that **dragged**³ the legal system with it. Most accusers were poor, most of their victims even poorer. In fact, **destitution**⁴ was the most common characteristic of English witches, even more than the fact that they were old women (and 90% were female⁵). The **curse**⁶ of the poor and **the injured**⁷ were believed to be much more powerful than those of the **able-bodied**⁸ and **the affluent**⁹. The poor, who were **otherwise**¹⁰ powerless, did nothing to **dispel**¹¹ this idea as it gave them a little power over others. Most **witch-trials**¹² **arose from**¹³ situations in which a poor person had cursed someone and the **curse**⁶ had come true.

Social Factors

Although each witch-trial was different, many had a factor in common: a destitute individual had come to a neighbour asking for food or help. This was **refused**¹⁴ and the **beggar**¹⁵ had cursed the person who refused to help. Notice that the accuser and the accused were members of the same community. But that community was changing. Those who were destitute demanded the continuation of the tradition of mutual help that had been the norm in mediaeval villages. However, those who had a little more were infected by the new values



A witch-trial

of individualism and a growing sense of private property which should have **freed**¹⁶ them from the requirement to help their **needy**¹⁷ neighbours. Nevertheless, they were still **aware of**¹⁸ the custom, and complex feelings of **guilt**¹⁹ and resentment usually **ensued**²⁰.

Were There Ever Any Witches?

In 1584 Reginald Scot wrote *Discoverie of Witchcraft*. In this book he **stated**²¹ that there were four types of witches: **1.** the innocent and falsely accused, **2.** the **deluded**²² and **half-crazed**²³ (who could do no harm to anyone despite their absurd confessions), **3.** the genuinely maleficent witches who injured their neighbours using **poison**²⁴, and **4.** the impostors who called themselves white witches and **pretended**²⁵ to **lift**²⁶ **curse**⁶s and find **lost property**²⁷. 150 years before the abolition of witchcraft as a **crime**²⁸, it was clear to the open-minded that witchcraft in the sense of the supernatural power to hurt people did not exist. Even before the **repeal**²⁹ of the witchcraft laws in 1736, the fact that a person **feared**³⁰ witches could be cited in court as evidence that he or she was **insane**³¹.

¹**witch-hunting** - persecuting people accused of practising black magic

²**but rather** - (in this case) by contrast it was

³**to drag** - (in this case) take, pull, involve

⁴**destitution** - (false friend) extreme poverty

⁵**approximately 50% of accusers were women**

⁶**curse** - malediction, the evil eye

⁷**the injured** - people with lesions

⁸**able-bodied** - healthy, fit

⁹**the affluent** - prosperous people

¹⁰**otherwise** - apart from that, in other ways

¹¹**to dispel** - dismiss, eliminate

¹²**witch-trial** - judicial process about black magic

¹³**to arise from** (arise-arose-arisen) - be caused by

¹⁴**to refuse sth.** - not give sth.

¹⁵**beggar** - poor person, vagabond

¹⁶**to free** - liberate

¹⁷**needy** - in want, poor, deprived

¹⁸**to be aware of** - be conscious of

¹⁹**guilt** - culpability (formal)

²⁰**to ensue** - follow, be the result of

²¹**to state** - declare

²²**the deluded** - people who believe sth. that is not in fact true

²³**(the) half-crazed** - people

who are a little mad

²⁴**poison** - a venom, a toxin

²⁵**to pretend to** - (false friend) simulate (+ -ing)

²⁶**to lift** - (in this case) eliminate

²⁷**lost property** - objects that have been lost

²⁸**crime** - (false friend) felony, serious illegal act

²⁹**repeal** - revocation, abolition

³⁰**to fear** - be afraid of

³¹**insane** - (false friend) mad, crazy

English Women Pirates

A Family Business

The most famous pirates of Elizabethan England were gentlemen such as Sir Walter Raleigh and Sir Francis Drake. However, they had their female **counterparts**¹. One was Lady Mary Killigrew. She came from a family of gentlemen pirates (the Wolverstons) and married another, Sir John Killigrew. **Indeed**², their son John and his wife, Elizabeth Killigrew, and *their* son, John, continued the family tradition into the 17th Century. The focus of their activity was the Cornish coast. Elizabeth's most famous prize was the *María de San Sebastián*, taken in January 1582. The ship's **owners**³ - Juan de Chavis and Captain Felipe de Oryo - **kicked up** such a **fuss**⁴ at the English **court**⁵ that Mrs Killigrew was forced into retirement. When she **took up**⁶ piracy again she was arrested, but family connections and **bribes**⁷ got her **acquitted**⁸.



Shield-Maiden/Pirate

Photo by Berig



Ann Bonny and Mary Read. Engraved by Benjamin Cole

The Black Widow

Mediterranean piracy also had its female characters. One was Charlotte de Berry, an Englishwoman who dressed as a man and went by the names of first 'Dick' and then 'Captain Rudolph'. As leader of her pirate **crew**⁹ Charlotte could be cruel; she once had a captive's mouth **sewn shut**¹⁰. However, she could also be romantic and she fell in love with and married the son of a **wealthy**¹¹ **landowner**¹² from Granada, José Sandano. Unfortunately, their ship **sunk**¹³ in a **storm**¹⁴ and after eight days on a **makeshift**¹⁵ **raft**¹⁶ the eight survivors **drew lots**¹⁷ to decide who would be dinner. Unfortunately, José **drew the short straw**¹⁸ and was immediately **shot dead**¹⁹. Despite being rescued, broken-hearted Charlotte **drowned**²⁰ herself soon afterwards.

Shield-Maidens²¹ in Ships

We think of the Vikings as male **crews**⁹ but at least one **Norse**²² **raider**²³ of the 9th Century, Alfhild, was a woman. Her **second-in-command**²⁴, Groa, was also a woman. They captained a pirate **fleet**²⁵ that operated in the Baltic and the North Sea.

- ¹**counterpart** - equivalent
- ²**indeed** - (*emphatic*) in fact
- ³**owner** - person who owns sth., person whose property sth. is
- ⁴**to kick up a fuss** - protest vehemently
- ⁵**court** - (*in this case*) royal entourage, palace
- ⁶**to take up** (take-took-taken) - adopt
- ⁷**bribe** - illegal payment
- ⁸**to get sb. acquitted** - cause sb. to be declared 'not guilty'

- (= 'innocent')
- ⁹**crew** - group of people who work together on a ship
- ¹⁰**to sew** /sou/ **shut** (sew-sewed-sewn) - close by sewing (i.e. using needle and thread)
- ¹¹**wealthy** - rich
- ¹²**landowner** - sb. who owns a lot of terrain
- ¹³**to sink** (sink-sank-sunk) - go down, submerge, go under



- ¹⁴**storm** - tempest, bad weather
- ¹⁵**makeshift** - improvised
- ¹⁶**raft** - floating platform
- ¹⁷**to draw lots** (draw-drew-drawn) - use chance to take a decision, draw straws
- ¹⁸**to draw the short straw** - lose in a game of chance
- ¹⁹**to be shot dead** - be killed with a gun
- ²⁰**to drown yourself** - kill yourself by suffocating in water
- ²¹**shield-maiden** - female Viking



- warrior
- ²²**Norse** (adj.) - Viking
- ²³**raider** - marauder, attacker
- ²⁴**second-in-command** - deputy, number two
- ²⁵**fleet** - group of ships, squadron, flotilla

Irish and American Women Pirates

The Pirate Queen of Connacht

Grace 'Granuaile' O'Malley's pirate **career**² **spanned**³ half a century. She was born in Connaught in the West of Ireland in the 1530s. She fought against rival Irish clans and against the English. But she also found time to have four children, the fourth born aboard ship. In fact, shortly after giving birth she had to come **on deck**⁴ to **rally**⁵ her men who were fighting off an attack by Algerian pirates. In 1593 Granuaile visited Queen Elizabeth of England to **complain**⁶ about the English Governor of Connaught who was **harassing**⁷ her pirate activities. The two old women obviously **got on**⁸ and the Queen sent orders to Governor Bingham not to interfere in Granuaile's

activities. She was still leading pirate **raids**⁹ in 1601 and **eventually**¹⁰ died in 1603.

Ireland can also **boast**¹¹ the most famous woman buccaneer of the 18th Century: Anne Bonny from Cork. She fought alongside her lover Calico Jack Rackham and was said to be an expert with both a **sword**¹² and a pistol. The lovers and their accomplice Mary Read were finally captured by the British navy in 1718. Calico was soon **hanged**¹³ but when the judge tried to sentence the women to death, they declared that they could not be hanged because they were pregnant. Mary died soon afterwards from fever in prison but there is no record of what **eventually**¹⁰ happened to Anne and her child.

US Women Pirates

America has also had its female pirates. The most romantic was **Fanny Campbell**. When this girl from Massachusetts heard that her boyfriend, William Lovell, was being held in a prison in Havana she joined a ship dressed as a man and then led a mutiny to take control of the ship. She rescued William and captured several other ships in the process. When the American Revolution **broke out**¹⁴ the pirates declared themselves **privateers**¹⁵ for Independence and attacked British ships. However, Fanny soon retired to start a large family with William in Massachusetts.

Sadie the Goat¹⁶ the leader of a New York gang in the 1860s. Her epithet came from her ability to **head-butt**¹⁷ people in the stomach. In 1869 Sadie lost her ear when it was bitten off by another female **thug**¹⁸, Englishwoman Gallus Mag. After this episode Sadie joined 'The Daybreak Boys', just one of the 50 or so gangs of river pirates operating around New York, New Jersey and Brooklyn. By force of personality Sadie became the leader of her **crew**¹⁹ and taught them to 'act like pirates' from the fiction she had read! However, armed resistance to the pirates along the Hudson River gradually became better organized and Sadie and her men **eventually**¹⁰ had to return to their land-based criminal activities in New York's Fourth Quarter.



Mary Read by Alexandre Debelle



Grace O'Malley

'this term means 'bald' - she cut her hair very short

2 career - (false friend) professional trajectory

3 to span - cover, continue over

4 on deck - onto the open-air area on a ship

5 to rally - muster, reassemble, regroup, reunite

6 to complain - protest

7 to harass - molest, exasperate, make sth. difficult

8 to get on (get-got-got) - have a good relationship

9 raid - (sudden) attack

10 eventually - (false friend) in the end

11 to boast - be proud of, claim

12 sword -

13 to be hanged -

14 to break out (break-broke-broken) - start, begin

15 privateer - pirate

with official permission to attack enemy ships

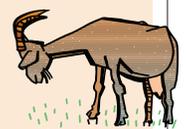
16 goat -

17 to head-butt

- hit with your head (like a goat¹⁶)

18 thug - hoodlum, gangster

19 crew - group of people who work together



Asian Women Pirates

In the 1680s an Indian woman warlord governed the city of Kutch and an enormous pirate **fleet**¹. She terrorized the coasts of the Arabian Sea from southern India to Oman. The anonymous queen achieved world fame when she captured the English ship, *Merchant's Delight* in 1684. The Captain, Edward Say, had **hidden**² hundreds of Venetian gold **coins**³ in his ship's cannons. Unfortunately, the pirates chose to fire the cannons when they **reached**⁴ India and the gold was shot into the sea. The pirate queen **held**⁵ Captain Say for a few days before freeing him and he brought her story back to Europe.

Chinese Women Pirates

Hsi-kai was an incredibly beautiful Cantonese prostitute. One day in 1801 she was taken aboard a pirate ship. The captain, Cheng I, fell madly in love with her and asked her to marry him. Hsi-kai agreed only on the condition that Cheng I **shared**⁶ his power equally with her. The pirate agreed and Hsi-kai became known as Cheng I Sao (= Cheng I's wife). The couple consolidated their power and organized agreements between the different pirate bands to **avoid fighting**⁷. Most of their activities involved 'protection' and **kidnapping**⁸ but the pirates were happy to fight if necessary and Cheng I Sao's men fought with their enemies' decapitated heads **hanging**⁹ around their **necks**¹⁰. The Chengs commanded hundreds of **junks**¹¹ and tens of thousands of pirates. But in November 1807 Cheng I was killed off the coast of Vietnam. Cheng I Sao demanded, and got, supreme command of the pirate council. For her second-in-command she chose Chang Pao, the 21-year-old adopted son of



Cheng I Sao

Photo uploaded by 北極企鵝觀賞團

Cheng I. Chang Pao had been abducted by the pirates as a teenager and **raped**¹² by Cheng I before being adopted. Cheng I Sao consolidated the family business by sleeping with Chang Pao and marrying him two years later. Business was good until Western gunboats began to be used against the pirates at the end of 1809. In 1810 Cheng I Sao and her pirates took advantage of a government amnesty, which allowed them to keep their **plunder**¹³ and retired to family life in Canton. Cheng I Sao had a son (Cheng Yü-lin) while Chang Pao became an officer in the army and reached colonel before dying of natural causes aged 36. Cheng I Sao lived to 69 and died peacefully.

Cheng I Sao was not the only famous Chinese woman pirate. **Lai Choi San** was the leader of a pirate **fleet**¹ of twelve **junks**¹¹ in the 1930s that operated around Macao. She amassed so much money that the 'Queen of the Macao Pirates' was also known as 'Mountain of **Wealth**¹⁴'. Lai Choi was made famous by a Finnish journalist who interviewed her during one of her pirate **raids**¹⁵. Her **fate**¹⁶ is controversial, though one theory is that she **was blown up**¹⁷ on ship by a Japanese torpedo.



Cheng I Sao

¹**fleet** - group of ships, squadron, flotilla

²**to hide** (hide-hid-hidden) - put in a secret place

³**coin** - (round) piece of metal money

⁴**to reach** - arrive in, get to

⁵**to hold** (hold-held-held) - (in this case) detain

⁶**to share** - divide up

⁷**to avoid fighting** - so as not to have to fight

⁸**kidnapping** - abduction, capture of sb. for ransom money

⁹**to hang sth.** (hang-hung-hung) - suspend sth.

¹⁰**neck** - part of the body where the head joins the torso

¹¹**junk** - Chinese ship

¹²**to rape** - sexually assault

¹³**plunder** - booty, loot, stolen

objects

¹⁴**wealth** - riches, money

¹⁵**raid** - surprise attack

¹⁶**fate** - death, destiny, end of your life

¹⁷**to be blown up** - die in an explosion

Mary Wollstonecraft

Mary Wollstonecraft was born in 1759. Her father was a violent alcoholic and as a child Mary used to throw herself between her **parents**¹ in an **attempt**² to protect her mother. Despite this, Mary's mother **spoil**³ her son and ignored Mary ("What was called spirit and **wit**⁴ in him was cruelly repressed in me."). Mary educated herself.

In 1783 Mary and her (unfortunately named) friend, Fanny Blood - along with two of Mary's sisters - founded a school of girls in Newington, London. The following year Fanny married, and her new husband took her to Lisbon to see if the climate would **improve**⁵ her health. When Mary heard that Fanny was expecting a baby, she travelled to Portugal to help her friend through childbirth. Unfortunately, both Fanny and the baby died. While Mary was away, her school - left in the hands of her sisters - went bankrupt.

Mary was forced to take a job as a **governess**⁶ in Ireland. It was there in 1786 that she learned to **despise**⁷ the indolent rich: her employer, Mrs Kingsborough, sometimes took five hours to dress! The following year Mary returned to London determined to become a professional writer. She soon found an intellectual home in the radical circle formed by William Godwin⁸, William Blake⁹, Henry Fuseli¹⁰, Thomas Paine¹¹, Joseph Priestley¹², William Wordsworth¹³ and Mary Hays¹⁴. Mary worked as a novelist, translator and literary critic during this period.

In 1792 Mary went to France to see the revolution for herself. There she became **infatuated**¹⁵ with a US adventurer, Gilbert Imlay, and they had a daughter called Fanny.¹⁶ In 1794 they returned to London where Imlay



Mary Wollstonecraft by John Opie National Portrait Gallery London

repudiated Mary and she **attempted suicide**¹⁷ by taking an overdose of laudanum. When she recovered she went to Scandinavia (with her baby and a **maid**¹⁸) to try to recover money that **was owed to**¹⁹ Imlay and **thus**²⁰ win him back. When she arrived back in London with the money, Imlay accepted it but rejected her again, so she tried to kill herself a second time. However, she was seen jumping into the Thames and rescued.

In 1796 she published *A Short Residence in Sweden, Norway and Denmark*, which was very well received. Mary finally **achieved**²¹ some stability when she fell in love with William Godwin in 1797. Unfortunately, Mary died the same year from complications following the birth of their daughter.²²

¹**one's parents** - one's mother and father

²**attempt** - effort

³**to spoil** (spoil-spoilt-spoilt) - indulge, favour

⁴**wit** - (in this case) intelligence

⁵**to improve sth.** - enhance sth., make sth. better

⁶**governess** - (historical)

woman employed to teach children in their home

⁷**to despise** - detest, feel disdain for

⁸**one of the founding fathers of anarchist philosophy**

⁹**revolutionary poet and painter**

¹⁰**leading Gothic painter**

¹¹**radical philosopher**

¹²**chemist and radical**

¹³**romantic poet**

¹⁴**early feminist commentator and novelist**

¹⁵**infatuated** - besotted, obsessively in love

¹⁶**Fanny (22) committed suicide in 1816**

¹⁷**to attempt suicide** - try to kill oneself

¹⁸**maid** - female servant

¹⁹**to be owed to** - be a debt to

²⁰**thus** - in this way

²¹**to achieve** - attain, get

²²**her daughter, Mary Goldwin Shelley, wrote the novel Frankenstein**

A Vindication of the Rights of Woman

Too Successful

A few books written in Britain in the Early Modern period (and shortly afterwards) can be said to have defined the hegemonic values of the modern Anglosphere. The best known are Adam Smith's *The Wealth of Nations* (1776), Thomas Paine's *The Rights of Man* (1791), Malthus's *The Principle of Population* (1798), David Ricardo's *Principles of Political Economy* (1817) and Charles Darwin's *The Origin of Species* (1844¹). However, the values and conclusions of none of these works have been accepted so completely as those of *A Vindication of the Rights of Woman* (1792). **Indeed**², one of the problems with Wollstonecraft's work is that its conclusions seem so obvious, so logical, that it **is** now **hardly**³ **worth reading**⁴. She **states**⁵ that if women received the same education as men, the two sexes could be intellectual equals. She concluded that as well as equal education, women needed some **means**⁶ of financial independence and political participation to be full citizens. She recognized that a good marriage should be based on mutual respect, compromise and friendship. Moreover, she states that educated women in more egalitarian relationships would make better mothers.

Indeed², *A Vindication of the Rights of Woman* was initially well-received, it only got one bad review (in a conservative **journal**⁷). However, a year after



Mary Wollstonecraft

¹**published 1859**

²**indeed** - (*emphatic*) in fact

³**hardly** - not really

⁴**be worth reading** - be sufficiently interesting to merit reading it

⁵**to state** - declare, say

⁶**means** - (*in this case*) form

⁷**journal** - magazine, publication

⁸**suicide attempt** - effort to kill oneself

⁹**to tarnish** - hurt, harm, stigmatize

¹⁰**had I** - (*old fashioned*) if I had

¹¹**to allow** - (*in this case*) give

¹²**rather** - somewhat,



Wollstonecraft honoured by the British parliament Photo by Neil Wissink

Mary's death, her anarchist husband, William Godwin, wrote a biography of her life. Her contemporaries were so shocked by her romances, illegitimate child and **suicide attempts**⁸ (see p. 37) that her reputation was **tarnished**⁹ for a century.

Criticisms

The biggest problem with *The Rights of Woman* is that it is not very well written, as Wollstonecraft freely admitted herself ("**Had I**¹⁰ **allowed**¹¹ myself more time I could have written a better book"). Moreover, the book is in some ways **rather**¹² conservative for modern Westerners. It **assumes**¹³ that the primary goal of women is motherhood. Besides, it is written **with** middle-class women **in mind**¹⁴ and **assumes**¹³ the presence of servants. Working-class women implicitly will **remain**¹⁵ uneducated and without the rights their elite 'sisters' **deserve to enjoy**¹⁶.

Finally, it is ironic that in *A Vindication* Wollstonecraft severely attacks women for their subservient and sentimental attachment to men and **urges**¹⁷ them to be more rational; **within**¹⁸ months of publishing the treatise, Wollstonecraft was in **just such a**¹⁹ passionate relationship to exactly the sort of **rake**²⁰ she **warns**²¹ her 'sisters' against.

surprisingly

¹³**to assume** - (*false friend*) take for granted, suppose

¹⁴**with X in mind** - focussing on X

¹⁵**to remain** - continue to be

¹⁶**deserve to enjoy** - should have

¹⁷**to urge** - incite

¹⁸**within** - (*in this case*) after only a few

¹⁹**just such a** - exactly that type of

²⁰**rake** - libertine, profligate, playboy

²¹**to warn** - caution, alert

Jane Austen

(1775-1817)



Photo by Marina Carresi

A Boring Life

Someone once wrote in relation to Jane Austen, "life's **dull**¹, and then you die". Well, in fact, they **didn't**² - I **made** that **up**³ - but they could have done. Absolutely nothing happened in Jane Austen's life. She was born, she **moved house**⁴ four times, she visited a few relations, and then 'plonk!' she died aged 42. Her **main**⁵ responsibility to her family **throughout**⁶ her adult life was breakfast. This does not mean she made the **toast**⁷ but **rather**⁸ that she **managed**⁹ the servants who made the toast. She also had to take the tea and coffee out of the **cupboard**¹⁰ where it was **locked away**¹¹ and give it to the servants to make hot drinks. **That was it**¹²: no more obligations to anyone. In the evening **she might read**¹³ a story to her family or play the piano **a bit**¹⁴ but only if she **felt up to**¹⁵ it. Of course, this comfortable monotony was ideal **soil**¹⁶ in which to cultivate a mind that captured every detail of domestic life - the details must have been so exciting! And it was in this area that Jane Austen **reigned supreme**¹⁷; what Sir Walter Scott called her "exquisite touch, which **renders**¹⁸



Jane Austen

ordinary **commonplace**¹⁹ things and characters interesting, from the truth of the description and the sentiment".

Interesting Family

However, not all Jane's **relatives**²⁰ were so boring. Her cousin Eliza was probably the illegitimate daughter of Warren Hastings, the Governor of India. When she returned from India with her mother, she spent time in France where she married the Comte de Fenillide. However, her husband was soon guillotined in the Revolution. Eliza returned to England, had a romance with Jane's brother James, then married another brother, Henry. She is believed to be the inspiration behind Mary Crawford in *Mansfield Park*. Moreover, Jane's aunt, Jane Leigh Perrot was accused of stealing a piece of **lace**²¹ from a shop in Bath in 1799. For this she **faced**²² deportation to Australia or, potentially, the death penalty. The possibility was real enough for her husband to **make arrangements**²³ to sell his property so that he could accompany her to the Penal Colony. Fortunately, she was **acquitted**²⁴.

¹**dull** - boring

²**they didn't** - (*in this case*) they didn't write that, nobody said that

³**to make sth. up** - invent

⁴**to move house** - change one's place of residence

⁵**main** - principal, primary

⁶**throughout (her)** - during all of (her), during (her) entire

⁷**to make the toast** (make-made-made) - toast bread

⁸**but rather that** - (*emphatic*) but that, in contrast

⁹**to manage sb.** - direct sb.

¹⁰**cupboard** - closet, closed box or room

¹¹**tea and coffee were luxury commodities which had to be kept under lock and key.**

¹²**that was it** - that was all (she had to do)

¹³**she might read** /ri:d/ - she

sometimes read /red/

¹⁴**a bit** - a little

¹⁵**to feel up to sth.** - feel that you have sufficient energy to do sth.

¹⁶**soil** - (*literally*) earth, land, (*metaphorically, in this case*) context in which sth. can

evolve

¹⁷**to reign supreme** - be an expert

¹⁸**to render** - make, convert

¹⁹**commonplace** - everyday, ordinary, mundane

²⁰**relative** - relation, member of one's extended family

²¹**lace** - delicate decorative type of textile used for handkerchiefs and tablecloths

²²**faced (punishment)** - could have received

²³**to make arrangements** (make-made-made) - organize a plan

²⁴**to acquit** - declare not guilty, say sb. is innocent

Waiting for Darcy

Family Life

Jane Austen's family belonged to the **so-called**¹ 'minor gentry' - not the super-rich but people who didn't have to work **so long as**² they were careful with their money. Her father and one brother were **clergymen**³. Two other brothers were **seamen**⁴. Jane's parents were both quite intellectual and they built a happy stable home. Reverend Austen's primary occupation was helping the Hampshire villagers with such **tricky**⁵ questions as **whether**⁶ Paris was in France or France in Paris or if they should **grow**⁷ the strange new food called 'potatoes'! However, things weren't as idiotically idyllic as they seemed; there was a **skeleton in the family closet**⁸. Jane had a brother called George (1766-1838) who was mentally retarded. He spent his entire life living as a paying guest with farm labourers a few miles from the family home at Steventon. Not very Christian **behaviour**⁹!

Jane was very **shy**¹⁰ about her work. She wrote on **tiny**¹¹ pieces of paper that could easily be **slipped**¹² under the desk **blotter**¹³ if anyone came into the room. We don't know what her family thought she was doing hour after hour every day but apparently when they went into her room to visit her she was always sitting at her desk looking at the ceiling and **whistling**¹⁴!

Love Life

Jane Austen never married. One reason may have been that marriage and **motherhood**¹⁵ would have robbed her of the time she needed to write. Anyway, motherhood was a dangerous business: three of Jane's **sisters-in-law**¹⁶ died in **childbirth**¹⁷. However, the mother of writer Mary Russell Mitford described young Jane as



A possible portrait of Jane Austen in her youth.

"the prettiest, **silliest**¹⁸, most affected, husband-hunting butterfly" she ever remembered. So maybe she just didn't find her **Darcy**¹⁹.

There were three men in Jane's life. When she was 20 she had a brief flirtation with Tom Lefroy which ended when Tom went back to his native Ireland. He **eventually**²⁰ became Lord Chief Justice of Ireland. Some years later Jane had a mysterious romance with an 'unnamed gentleman' while travelling in the West Country. Unfortunately, this man died mysteriously before their love could be **taken any further**²¹. Finally, a young family friend, Harris Bigg-Wither asked Jane to marry him in 1802. Jane accepted, then refused the next day. The idea that *Mansfield Park*, *Emma* and *Persuasion* could have been written by someone known as 'Jane Bigg-Wither' (instead of 'Jane Austen') **doesn't bear thinking about**²²!

¹**to the so-called** - to what is/was known as

²**so long as** - provided that, if (and only if)

³**clergyman** - vicar, religious man

⁴**seaman** - sailor, mariner

⁵**tricky** - difficult, challenging

⁶**whether** - 'if' (but 'if' cannot be used before 'or')

⁷**to grow** - (in this case) cultivate

⁸**skeleton in the closet** - unpleasant secret

⁹**behaviour** - conduct

¹⁰**shy** - timid

¹¹**tiny** /'taini/ - very small

¹²**to slip** - (in this case) hide, conceal, put

¹³**blotter** - piece of special thick permeable paper used to absorb ink

¹⁴**whistling** - making musical notes by blowing through your mouth

¹⁵**motherhood** - maternity

¹⁶**sister-in-law** - wife of her brother

¹⁷**in childbirth** - having babies

¹⁸**silliest** - most ridiculous

¹⁹**one's Darcy** - one's Mr Right, the perfect husband

²⁰**eventually** - (false friend) in the end

²¹**to take sth. further** (take-took taken) - develop sth., let sth. evolve

²²**doesn't bear thinking about** - is too terrible to consider

A New Religion?

An Unwelcome Fan

In her own time, the **debauched**¹ Prince of Wales was one of Jane's biggest fans and he asked her to dedicate *Emma* to him. He also asked her, through a court official to write a romance about his family. She **politely**² declined. In fact, Jane detested the Prince Regent and **backed**³ his wife, Caroline, in their **feuding**⁴. She once wrote, "I will support her **as long as**⁵ I can, because she is a Woman, & because I hate her husband."

Jane Who?

Jane went to **Winchester** to die (if you knew Winchester you'd understand why!). Her **tomb**⁶ in Winchester Cathedral lists her many qualities but does not mention her writing! After her death a merchant rented her home there and turned it into a shop. After a few months he decided to **put up**⁷ a plaque that said, "Home of Jane Austen 1775-1817" because American tourists **kept coming**⁸ into his shop to ask if it was Jane's home. However, when he was asked if the plaque had **done the trick**⁹, he **complained**¹⁰ **bitterly**¹¹, "Twice¹² as many people are **bothering**¹³ me now. **Only now**¹⁴ they are Englishmen. They keep coming in to ask, "Who was Jane Austen?"



Filming *Pride and Prejudice* in Stamford, Lincolnshire



Jane Austen's last home (in Winchester)

Photo by Peter Broster

England's Most Popular Author

Jane Austen has been described as England's most popular author¹⁵. Over nine million people in the UK can be counted on to watch TV adaptations of her novels. *Pride*

and *Prejudice* is often described as the most famous book ever written by a woman. In 2007 the novel **beat**¹⁶ the Bible to be voted the number one "book I could not live without" in the UK!

But why is she so popular? Probably because she **portrays**¹⁷ people who are desperately trying to be middle class and respectable, often despite the fact that they don't have the economic **wherewithal**¹⁸ to really **fit in**¹⁹. That description **fits**²⁰ a **large**²¹ part of the population of England, so people can **relate to**²² her characters. But Austen's stories **are set in**²³ the pre-industrial, semi-rural England in which she lived and many English people feel an enormous nostalgia for this superficially idyllic time and place.

¹**debauched** - degenerate, corrupt, depraved, immoral

²**politely** - courteously

³**to back** - support, defend

⁴**feuding** - vendetta, hostilities

⁵**as long as** - (in this case) for as much time as

⁶**tomb** /tu:m/ - sepulchre, sarcophagus

⁷**to put sth. up** (put-put-put) - install, display

⁸**to keep coming** (keep-kept-kept) - (in this case) come repeatedly

⁹**to do the trick** - (colloquial) offer a solution

¹⁰**to complain** - protest

¹¹**bitterly** - resentfully, discontentedly

¹²**twice** - x2

¹³**to bother** - disturb, inconvenience, pester

¹⁴**only now** - the only difference is that now

¹⁵**By Maggie Lane, one of her biographers. The use of "England's" rather than "Britain's" is important because Jane Austen's writing is quintessentially English rather than British.**

¹⁶**to beat** (beat-beat-beaten) - surpass, triumph over

¹⁷**to portray** - represent, describe

¹⁸**wherewithal** - resources, funds, money, capital

¹⁹**to fit in** - be integrated

²⁰**to fit** - (in this case) is true for

²¹**large** - (false friend) significant

²²**to relate to** - empathize with, identify with

²³**to be set in** - take place in, occur in

Women, Islam & the Victorians

The lives of all our great grandmothers were not much better than those of today's women in Muslim countries.

In the West the treatment of women in the Islamic world is often described as 'mediaeval'. We are **quite right**¹ to condemn the subjugation of one half of the population by the other half, but the adjective is wrong. We take **comfort**² in the word 'mediaeval' because it suggests that the **mistreatment**³ of women in our societies was in some remote past, but the best comparison with Muslim misogyny in Western culture would be the Victorian Age.

A Misogynist Queen

Part of the problem was **Queen Victoria** herself. As a symbol she could not have served the reactionary cause better: a submissive wife, a mother of nine and, for most of her life, a **widow**⁴ dressed in black **unable to**⁵ confront life without her husband. Specifically in her public pronouncements, the Queen did a lot to damage the emancipation of women. She opposed women's right to vote and she believed in wives' submission to their husbands.

Isolation & Boredom⁶

Victorian ladies were expected not to work. **Indeed**⁷, the fact that a woman had a public life outside the home was considered a humiliation for the man responsible for her.



Queen Victoria and her family.

Photo by John Jabez Edwin Mayall

The frustration of **affluent**⁸ women with literally nothing to do in their lives is difficult for us to imagine today.

In 1850 25% of British women worked but this was mostly in **menial**⁹ jobs which exposed them to the potential sexual exploitation of their (**male**¹⁰) employers. Even if they were employed in a decent **household**¹¹, women servants were expected to work 16½ hours a day, at least six days a week¹². The alternative was to **become**¹³ one of the tens of thousands of prostitutes in London and other big cities.

The Angel of the Home

The model Victorian lady was described as 'the angel of the home'. Despite this, the home was not necessarily a safe place for women. A Victorian husband had the legal right to sell his wife until 1857 and **to beat**¹⁴ her until 1879. The law **allowed**¹⁵ him to **lock** her **up**¹⁶ until 1891. In fact, all her possessions were considered his until 1882. Of course, there were good Victorian husbands - **just as**¹⁷ there are good Muslim husbands - but Victorian women were powerless if the man they married was a **tyrant**¹⁸.



Wife selling

¹**quite right** - (*emphatic*) right, correct

²**comfort** - (*in this case*) consolation, reassurance

³**mistreatment** - ill-treatment, abuse

⁴**widow** - woman whose husband has died

⁵**unable to** - not able to

⁶**boredom** - tedium

⁷**indeed** - (*emphatic*) in fact

⁸**affluent** - prosperous, rich

⁹**menial** - unskilled, non-specialized

¹⁰**male** - ♂

¹¹**household** - family

¹²**many lady reformers resisted a mandatory free**

day for servants each week arguing that it would give girls the opportunity to get into trouble (or to augment their minimal salaries through prostitution)!

¹³**to become** (become-became-become) - **come** to be, convert oneself into

¹⁴**to beat** (beat-beat-beaten) - hit, strike, **batter**

¹⁵**to allow** - permit, let

¹⁶**to lock up** - imprison, incarcerate, **hold captive**

¹⁷**just as** - (*in this case*) in the same way that

¹⁸**tyrant** /'taɪrənt/ - oppressor, brute, **despot**

19th-Century Western Misogyny

The Asexual Woman

We are often shocked by Muslims' **prudish**¹ attitude to sexuality which requires women's entire bodies to be covered. But the Victorians had a similar obsession with female **flesh**² and supposedly piano legs had to be covered to prevent offence. A lady was believed to be asexual, only submitting to her husband's sexual **advances**³ to please him, and because she desired **motherhood**⁴.

The White Slave Trade

We may associate obsessive attitudes about virginity (in women) with Muslim countries today, but the Victorians were equally obsessed⁵. **So much so**⁶ that there was a **thriving**⁷ 'white slave **trade**⁸' in virgin women and girls.

Mutilation

One of the greatest **crimes**⁹ committed against women in some Islamic (and African) societies is a clitoridectomy, the ablation of the clitoris. However, this brutal operation was a relatively frequent medical solution to female sexual 'disorders' in Victorian England. Moreover, clitoridectomy was not the only medical 'solution' for **behavioural**¹⁰ disorders in Victorian women. An even more



Photo by Marius Arnesen - www.flickr.com/people/56046647@N00

common solution was hysterectomy - the **removal**¹¹ of the **womb**¹² from 'hysterical'¹³ women.

Book Burners

British society was shocked by the public book burning of **Salman Rushdie's** supposedly blasphemous *Satanic Verses* by Muslims in 1989. However, public book burning was not unknown in Victorian Times. **Indeed**¹⁴ the novel *Ruth* by the great Victorian novelist, **Elizabeth Gaskell**, was burnt in Manchester in 1853. Did the novel offend the basic religious values of Victorian Society? No, its great **crime**⁹ was to offer a **sympathetic**¹⁵ **portrayal**¹⁶ of a single mother. As late as 1895 a **bishop**¹⁷ publicly burnt **Thomas Hardy's** *Jude the Obscure* because it portrayed an extramarital relationship.

Victorian Values

We should condemn misogyny in any culture. However, we should also **realize**¹⁸ that similar practices have been part of our own cultures in the not-too-distant past. Moreover, the Victorian case was not that different from all contemporary Western societies.

¹**prudish** - puritanical, priggish, prim, prissy

²**flesh** - human meat, (in this case) naked (= nude) skin

³**advances** - (in this case) sexual overtures

⁴**motherhood** - being a mother, maternity

⁵for example, the Muslim

paradise (for men) is full of virgins

⁶**so much so** - to such an extent, to such a degree

⁷**thriving** - profitable, prosperous, flourishing

⁸**trade** - commerce

⁹**crime** - (in this case) wrong, abomination

¹⁰**behavioural** - relating to conduct

¹¹**removal** - elimination

¹²**womb** /wu:m/ - uterus

¹³**hysteria originally implied that the uterus had begun to move about the woman's body causing her to act in a strange way! From Greek**

hustera (= womb, uterus)

¹⁴**indeed** - (emphatic) in fact

¹⁵**sympathetic** - (false friend) compassionate

¹⁶**portrayal** - description, depiction, representation

¹⁷**bishop** - head of a diocese

¹⁸**to realize** - (false friend) be aware, be conscious

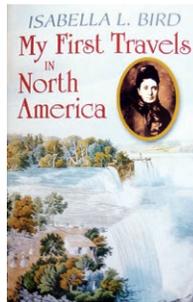
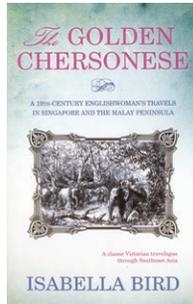
Isabella Bird

In the **lead-up to**¹ the Boxer Rebellion² foreigners **were assumed to be**³ Christian missionaries and frequently attacked. In the province of Sichuan a **mob**⁴ **spotted**⁵ a 65-year-old Englishwoman and **chased**⁶ her into a house. When she **managed to**⁷ barricade herself into the top floor of the house, the **mob**⁴ **set fire to**⁸ the building. At the last minute soldiers arrived to save the Englishwoman. The old lady was not a missionary, she was Isabella Bird (1831-1904), the most famous woman traveller of her age.

An Illness called Wanderlust⁹

When Isabella was 23 her father offered her £100 to travel wherever she liked, because her doctor had recommended travel as a cure for her ill-health. She used the money to travel around the eastern States of the USA and the eastern Provinces of Canada. On her initial voyage she discovered that, while others became sick in a storm at sea, she **was invigorated**¹⁰ by the experience. On her return she used the letters she had written home to her sister, Henrietta, to write *The Englishwoman in America* (1856). The **travelogue**¹¹ was a success and **at some stage**¹² Isabella must have **realized**¹³ that she was in a position to use writing to finance **further**¹⁴ travel.

Over the next dozen years the **bonds**¹⁵ **tying**¹⁶ Isabella to Britain gradually broke. Her father died in 1858 and her mother in 1866. During this period she made three short trips to North America and one to the Mediterranean. However, the **turning-point**¹⁷ in her life came in 1872 when she planned to travel around the world. First she visited Australia and New Zealand, neither of which



Isabella Bird

impressed her much. She then **sailed for**¹⁸ San Francisco. On the way she stopped off in Hawaii, then known as the Sandwich Islands, and fell in love with the place. **While**¹⁹ in Hawaii, Isabella climbed the world's biggest active volcano.

Exploring the Rockies

After six months Isabella left Hawaii and **sailed to**²⁰ San Francisco. From there she went into the mountains of Colorado. In the Rocky Mountains Isabella **befriended**²¹ a **notorious**²² **outlaw**²³, 'Mountain Jim' Nugent, who in fact saved her life in a blizzard.²⁴ Mountain Jim was apparently handsome despite the fact that he had lost one of his eyes when he had been attacked by a grizzly bear. He fell in love with Isabella though she **turned him down**²⁵. Less than a year after she left the Rockies he was shot dead in mysterious circumstances.

¹**lead-up to** - preliminary events before

²**nationalist rising in China in 1899 against foreign domination**

³**X were assumed to be** - it was assumed (= supposed) that X were

⁴**mob** - angry crowd, tumult

⁵**to spot** - see, identify

⁶**to chase** - pursue, run after

⁷**to manage to** - be able to (with

difficulty)

⁸**to set fire to** (set-set-set) - start to burn

⁹**wanderlust** - enthusiasm for travelling

¹⁰**to be invigorated** - be energized, be revitalized

¹¹**travelogue** - book describing one's experiences travelling

¹²**at some stage** - in some indeterminate moment

¹³**to realize** - (false friend)

become conscious

¹⁴**further** - (in this case) more, additional

¹⁵**bond** - attachment, link, connection

¹⁶**to tie** - fasten, bind, hold

¹⁷**turning-point** - crucial moment

¹⁸**to sail for** - go by ship in the direction of

¹⁹**while** - (in this case) during the time that she was

²⁰**to sail to** - go by ship to

²¹**to befriend** - make friends with

²²**notorious** - infamous

²³**outlaw** - bandit, sb. who does not respect the law

²⁴**it was so cold that her eyes froze shut!**

²⁵**to turn sb. down** - (in this case) reject (= not accept) sb's amorous advances

The Widow¹ with Wanderlust

Mrs Bishop

In 1874 Isabella returned home and **achieved**² publishing **success**³ with a **string**⁴ of books about her adventures. The next year she **got engaged to**⁵ the family doctor, John Bishop. In 1878-79 she travelled extensively in Japan and Malaya. In the Malay Peninsula she travelled on an elephant. However, when she returned home her sister was dying of typhoid and in the **aftermath**⁶ of this terrible loss she married Dr Bishop in 1881 - on the understanding that she would continue to write and travel. The couple were happy together, though Isabella was frequently ill. The time had apparently come for 50-year-old Isabella to **settle down**⁷, **milking**⁸ her last adventures for more **travelogues**⁹. All that changed when her husband John died of anaemia in 1886 after only five years of marriage. The most intense period of travelling in Isabella's life was still to come.

The Globetrotting¹⁰ Pensioner

After studying **nursing**¹¹ so that her travels could be useful for local people, in 1889 Isabella **set off for**¹² India and Tibet, returning via Persia, Mesopotamia, Kurdistan, Armenia and Turkey. On the Tibetan **border**¹³ her horse **lost** its **footing**¹⁴ in a **fast-flowing**¹⁵ mountain river and **drowned**¹⁶; she broke two **ribs**¹⁷. She **nearly**¹⁸ died of **thirst**¹⁹ and exhaustion crossing the deserts of eastern Persia in winter. In 1891 she was the first woman to be made a member of the Royal Geographic Society.²⁰



Photo by Isabella Lucy Bird



Isabella Bird Bishop



Photo by Isabella Lucy Bird

In 1894 63-year-old Isabella **set off on**²¹ a three-year trip that would **take in**²² Canada, China, Manchuria, Russia, Korea and Japan. Isabella was often in danger in the Far East and she **nearly**¹⁸ got caught up in the **(First) Sino-Japanese War**²³. On one occasion she **was stoned**²⁴ and **knocked out**²⁵. After a few years living in London and more publishing **successes**³ she went to Morocco in 1900 touring the Atlas Mountains and riding many hundreds of miles there. When she died in 1904 aged 72 she was planning another trip to China. *The Times* called her "**the boldest**²⁶ of travellers".

¹**widow** - woman whose husband has died

²**to achieve** - attain, get

³**success** [U/C] - (false friend) triumphs

⁴**string** - series, sequence

⁵**to get engaged to sb.** (get-got-got) - promise to marry sb.

⁶**aftermath** - period immediately after sth.

⁷**to settle down** - start to live more conventionally

⁸**to milk sth.** - use sth. in order

to generate sth. else

⁹**travelogue** - book describing one's experiences travelling

¹⁰**globetrotting** - who travels around the world

¹¹**nursing** - the training to be a nurse →

¹²**to set off for** (set-set-set) - go in the direction of

¹³**border** - frontier

¹⁴**to lose one's footing** (lose-lost-lost)



- fall over

¹⁵**fast-flowing** - torrential

¹⁶**to drown** - suffocate underwater

¹⁷**rib** - one of the bones of the thorax

¹⁸**nearly** - almost

¹⁹**thirst** - insufficient consumption of water

²⁰**the decision was controversial and the next year the RGS voted not to allow any more female members**

²¹**to set off on** (set-set-set) - start off on, begin

²²**to take in** (take-took-taken) - include

²³**First Sino-Japanese War** - war between China and Japan in 1894-95

²⁴**to be stoned** - be attacked by sb. throwing stones

²⁵**to knock sb. out** - render sb. unconscious

²⁶**the boldest** - the most courageous/valiant

Dorothy Parker: The Most Quoted Woman Ever

Dorothy Parker was almost certainly the greatest female literary **wit**¹ of all time.

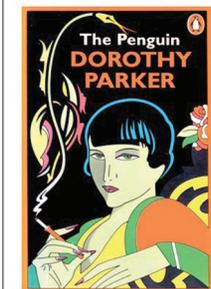
Dorothy Rothschild

Dorothy Parker's **maiden name**² was Dorothy Rothschild, though unfortunately for her she was no **relation**³ of the banking family. Dorothy was born in New Jersey on August 22, 1893. Her father was Jewish but her mother - who died when Dorothy was four - was a Catholic. Dorothy was educated at the *Blessed Sacrament Convent School* in New York. According to Dorothy the only thing she learned there was that "if you **spit**⁴ on a pencil **eraser**⁵, it will erase **ink**⁶".

Dorothy was born over two months premature. She was rarely punctual in her life and **quipped**⁷ that "My premature birth was the last time I was early for anything". In fact, she was early to one other event in her life. Her husband, **Edwin Parker**, **tricked**⁸ her **into** arriving early for a funeral by lying about the time. They were the first to arrive and Edwin began **fooling around**⁹ with some **knobs**¹⁰ under the **casket**¹¹. Suddenly the mechanism **sprang to life**¹² and the horrified couple watched as



Members of "The Algonquin Round Table".



the **coffin**¹³ slowly disappeared into the flames of the crematorium's **furnace**¹⁴. Dorothy and Eddie then **fled**¹⁵ the building before any of the other **mourners**¹⁶ arrived.

Dorothy's Reign of Terror

When Dorothy was only 23 she sold some poetry to *Vogue* and got offered **an editorial position**¹⁷ on the magazine. The next year she was offered the job of drama critic for *Vanity Fair*. She was finally **sacked**¹⁸ from that magazine in 1920 for the **acerbity**¹⁹ of her drama reviews after numerous **complaints**²⁰ from her victims. Her collection of light, cynical verse, *Enough Rope*, was a best-seller in 1926. Her most famous book-review work was for *The New Yorker* between 1927 and 1933 and she did much to form the character of the publication.

Parker could be a caustic critic and she herself described her time writing reviews for *The New Yorker* as her 'Reign of Terror'. Memorable lines from her reviews include, "the only thing I didn't like about *The Barretts of Wimpole Street* was the play". However, perhaps her cruellest review was of an actress in *Silent Witness* (1931); Dorothy wrote, "**Had she not**²¹ **luckily**²² been **strangled**²³ by a member of the cast I should have **fought my way to**²⁴ the **stage**²⁵ and **done her in**²⁶ myself".

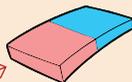
¹**wit** - (in this case) wag, humorist, comic

²**maiden name** - surname of a woman before she marries (if she adopts her husband's family name)

³**relation** - (in this case) relative, member of the extended family

⁴**to spit** (spit-spat-spat) - eject saliva

⁵**eraser** (US English) - rubber (UK English)



⁶**ink** - liquid for writing

⁷**to quip** - joke, say humorously

⁸**to trick sb. into sth.** - convince sb. of sth. that is not true so that they act in a way you want them to

⁹**to fool around** - play with, fiddle with, tinker with



¹⁰**knob** - handle

¹¹**casket** - (in this case) coffin¹³, box for a cadaver

¹²**to sprang to life** (spring-sprang-sprung) - become active, start

¹³**coffin** -

¹⁴**furnace** - fire inside a special container

¹⁵**to flee** (flee-fled-fled) - escape from

¹⁶**mourner** - sb. who goes to a funeral

¹⁷**an editorial position** - a job as editor

¹⁸**to sack** - dismiss, fire, make sb. unemployed

¹⁹**acerbity** - sarcasm, abrasiveness

²⁰**complaint** - protest, criticism



²¹**had she not** - (in this case) if she had not

²²**luckily** - fortunately

²³**to strangle** -

²⁴**to fight one's way to** (fight-fought-fought) - force one's way to, approach energetically

²⁵**stage** - platform in a theatre on which the actors act

²⁶**to do sb. in** (do-did-done) - kill, murder

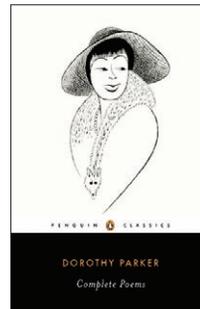
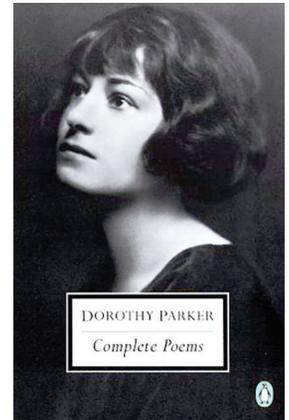
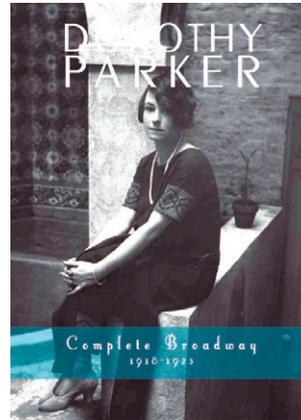


Dorothy Parker: A Chaotic Private Life

Dorothy's private life was chaotic but she epitomized the 'liberated woman' of the 1920s, especially in her open and humorous references to sex. She was an alcoholic and it is ironic that her most creative years were exactly those of **the Prohibition**¹. She tried to commit suicide four times.

She had married alcoholic **stockbroker**² **Edwin Pond Parker** in 1917 and by 1922 they were separated; they got divorced in 1928, though she kept his surname. During the 1920s she had a series of relationships with handsome young film-stars and even had a **brief**³ affair with **F. Scott Fitzgerald** while he was married to Zelda. According to Sheilah Graham, Dorothy was motivated by compassion and Fitzgerald by **despair**⁴. In 1933 Dorothy married her second husband, **Alan Campbell**, and they went to Hollywood to collaborate as scriptwriters. She worked on more than 15 movies, including *A Star is Born* (1937). Dorothy and Alan got divorced in 1947, remarried in 1950, got divorced again in 1951 and remarried again in 1961. When someone at the 1950 reception **pointed out**⁵ that many of those present hadn't spoken to each other for years, Dorothy **blurted out**⁶, "Including the **bride**⁷ and **groom**⁸!"

She **remained**⁹ in Hollywood until Campbell's death in 1963 and then returned to New York City for the last four years of her life living alone in a hotel room with her **poodle**¹⁰. Her estate when she died **was worth**¹¹ only \$20,000 but she left it to *The National Association for the*



A Star is Born

Advancement of Colored People (NAACP). Dorothy Parker asked that there be no formal ceremony at her funeral. Her friend **Zero Mostel** reminded his audience of this at the funeral service and added, "In fact, if she had **had her way**¹², I suspect she would not be here at all!"

Anti-American Activities

Dorothy became active in **left-wing**¹³ politics in the 1930s and **reported from**¹⁴ Spain during the Spanish Civil War in 1937. After World War II she was **witch-hunted**¹⁵ **out of**¹⁶ Hollywood by the Committee for Un-American Activities accused of **supporting**¹⁷ Communism - though she herself said that "the only 'ism' in Hollywood is plagiarism". She told the FBI, "Listen, I can't even get my dog to stay down. Do I look to you like someone who could **overthrow**¹⁸ the government?"

¹**the Prohibition** - period around the 1920s when alcohol was illegal in the USA

²**stockbroker** - an agent who buys and sells stocks (= shares of a company's capital) and bonds

³**brief** - short

⁴**despair** - hopelessness,

desperation

⁵**to point out** - (in this case) mention

⁶**to blurt out** - say impetuously/ impulsively

⁷**bride** - woman at her wedding

⁸**(bride)groom** - man at his wedding

⁹**to remain** - continue to be

¹⁰**poodle** -  be valued at

¹²**to have one's way** (have-had-had) - do as one pleases/chooses

¹³**left-wing** - socialist, progressive

¹⁴**to report from swh.** - send articles describing one's experiences from swh.

¹⁵**to witch-hunt** - persecute sb. for his/her ideas

¹⁶**out of** - from

¹⁷**to support** - back, defend, help

¹⁸**to overthrow** (-throw/-threw/-thrown) - bring down

Margaret Sanger: the Mother of Family Planning

by Marina Carresi

The other day I **came across**¹ a fascinating video clip on *YouTube*: a 1950s interview by Mike Wallace of a woman called Margaret Sanger. This is TV from another era with the interviewer **praising**² Philip Morris cigarettes (the programme's sponsor) before starting! In the interview you see an American matriarch saying remarkably uncontroversial things about birth control. However, in the related videos offered on YouTube there are a whole series of clips suggesting that Sanger was a racist and that she inspired the Holocaust. There is even a photo of her speaking to a group of **hooded**³ members of the Ku Klux Klan. On the other hand, Hilary Clinton and Barack Obama have spoken of their admiration for her. Dr Martin Luther King also expressed his respect for her. I was intrigued. A woman who died over 40 years ago who was still able to provoke **heated**⁴ debate in today's America. I had to **find out**⁵ more.



Contraceptive pills

Photo by Daniela Alejandra Robles



Margaret Sanger

Photo by Library of Congress

A Family in Need of Planning

Margaret Higgins was born into a working-class Irish-American family in 1879 in Corning, a factory town near New York. Her father, Michael, was a **notorious**⁶ atheist, her mother, Ann, a Catholic. After giving birth to 11 children Ann Higgins died of tuberculosis. Margaret would have liked to become a doctor to help women like her mother but the family **couldn't afford**⁷ it. After Ann's death, Michael became increasingly tyrannical and some month's later 19-year-old Margaret left home to **train as**⁸ a **nurse**⁹. Working in nursing Margaret **came across**¹ countless poor women who were desperate not to have any more children. During her third and final year of training to be a nurse Margaret met William Sanger, a young architect. Bill pressured Margaret into getting married despite her reluctance and they soon had three children. To his credit Bill **was willing to**¹⁰ help with the shopping and the housework. **Indeed**¹¹, Margaret's primary problem at this time was boredom, though they both became socialists and she **threw herself into**¹² organizing clubs for working women.

¹to **come across** (come-came-come) - encounter

²to **praise** - express admiration for

³**hooded** - with their faces covered (by pointed white caps)

⁴**heated** - (in this case) intense

⁵to **find out** (find-found-found)

- discover

⁶**notorious** - well-known, infamous

⁷**couldn't afford** - didn't have enough money to pay for

⁸to **train as** - prepare to be, receive instruction to be

⁹**nurse** -



¹⁰to **be willing to** - be ready to, be prepared to

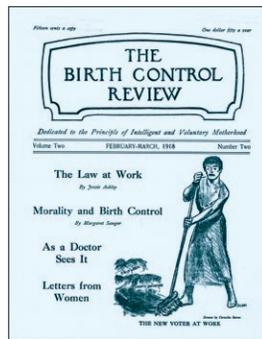
¹¹**indeed** - (emphatic) in fact

¹²to **throw oneself into** (throw-threw-thrown) - become enthusiastically involved in

What Every Girl Should Know

Finding a Purpose to Life

With her children at school Margaret started to **take on**¹ obstetric cases. Her work took her to the lower East Side of New York where the poverty was terrible. What **disturbed**² her most was that the women who tried to have abortions were very often 'good' mothers and their husbands weren't monsters. It was simply cause and effect; marriage meant sex, sex meant babies, babies meant increased poverty. The only solution was abstinence but even having sexual intercourse only once a year could produce a baby a year.³ So she decided to help these women to look for efficient and easy-to-use contraceptives. At the same time she started to **give health talks**⁴ for the Women's Commission of the Socialist Party and started to write short articles for a New York newspaper, *Call*. In 1912 they published a series of articles by Margaret called *What Every Girl Should Know*. The last of these articles touched on venereal diseases, their causes and effects, and how to **avoid**⁵ them. The Post Office immediately **banned**⁶ *Call* under the 1873 Comstock Law, which made it illegal to send obscene **matter**⁷ through the US **mail**⁸. From that moment on a sense of mission had begun to inspire her and she began trying to **find out**⁹ everything she could about every form of contraception available.



Sanger before a 1917 trial in which she was found guilty of opening a birth-control clinic in New York.

Importing Contraception

In October 1913 the entire family Sanger **sailed for**¹⁰ Europe. Margaret **was looking for**¹¹ safe contraception which even **illiterate**¹² women could use. She found it in Paris. **Loaded down with**¹³ contraceptive **devices**¹⁴ and pamphlets with **recipes for**¹⁵ 'suppositories' passed down from generation to generation, she decided to return to America and 'to **stir up**¹⁶ a national campaign'. In December 1913, after some disagreements Bill decided to stay in Paris and she **sailed for home**¹⁷. In the US she approached influential feminists to **seek**¹⁸ help to try to find ways to **avoid**¹⁹ the Comstock laws but it made her angry that the feminists didn't see the **releasing**²⁰ of women from their biological subservience as a priority; in her opinion it was a **far greater**²¹ obstacle to progress than not having the vote.

¹ **to take on** (take-took-taken) - work on, become involved in

² **to disturb** - upset, affect, alarm, perturb

³ **Margaret heard doctors telling one anxious husband to "go and sleep on the roof!"**

⁴ **to give a health talk** (give-gave-given) - give a speech about health, talk publicly

about health

⁵ **to avoid** - (in this case) not

suffer from

⁶ **to ban** - prohibit

⁷ **matter** - (in this case) images or writing

⁸ **mail** - (in this case) postal service

⁹ **to find out** (find-found-found) - discover

¹⁰ **to sail for** - go to... in a ship

¹¹ **to look for** - seek, try to find

¹² **illiterate** - who cannot read or write

¹³ **loaded down with** - carrying many

¹⁴ **device** - gadget, utensil, instrument

¹⁵ **recipe for** - instructions on how to prepare

¹⁶ **to stir up** - agitate for, provoke

¹⁷ **to sail for home** - go home in a ship

¹⁸ **to seek** (seek-sought-sought) - ask for, try to obtain

¹⁹ **to avoid** - get round, evade

²⁰ **releasing** - freeing, liberation

²¹ **far greater** - much more important

The Woman Rebel

Margaret Sanger and
son in Japan, 1921

Photo by Library of Congress (cropped)



The Socialists were more helpful because they gave her **hints**¹ on how to **set about**² publishing a clandestine paper, *The Woman Rebel*³. At the end of August 1914 Margaret received the visit of two officials who told her that with the last three **issues**⁴ of *Woman Rebel* she was breaking the law **on nine counts**⁵ and that they had orders to arrest her. The arrest was only the first of many. In total she was sent to prison eight times for promoting birth control. **Undiscouraged**⁶, she dedicated her life to promoting family planning in the USA and elsewhere and ensured that when the contraceptive pill emerged in the 1960s the world was ready to **embrace**⁷ it.

Saint or She-Devil?

So, what about 'Sanger the Racist'? Well, Margaret Sanger believed that it would be good for society, and good for the poor, if poor people had fewer children. She never specifically called for birth control among African Americans but they formed a significant percentage of the poor, so she certainly worked to promote birth control in black communities. She was not anti-Semitic; her first husband was Jewish, so the idea is ridiculous. She **did speak**⁸ to KKK meetings on several occasions in 1926. She said it was "one of the **weirdest**⁹ experiences I had in **lecturing**¹⁰" and said she had to use very basic vocabulary because it was like "trying to make children

understand". Sanger categorically rejected the Nazis in 1933, the year they came to power, long before most people decided that Hitler was **evil**¹¹. However, she was perfectly capable of the casual racism that was typical in the English-speaking world in the 1920s and 1930s.

Sanger was a vehement opponent of the Catholic Church since childhood. In fact, this may have been one of the things that induced her to talk to the KKK's women's organization in 1926. At that time the Klan was more of an anti-Catholic organization than an anti-black movement. In any case she was prepared to talk to anyone who would listen and she clearly wasn't impressed by the **Klanswomen**¹². In the Mike Wallace interview Sanger, though an old lady in her seventies, is still vehement in her rejection of Catholic **priests**¹³: "What do they know? After all, they're celibates; they don't know love, they don't know marriage, they don't know anything about **bringing up**¹⁴ children or about the problems of married life and yet they speak to people as if they were God!"

In the end, one has to conclude that Sanger's life work liberated billions of women giving them the possibility to choose the number of children they had. This is her greatest **crime**¹⁵ in the eyes of Christian extremists in the USA, though of course the best way to vilify her is to **link** her **to**¹⁶ the Nazis and the KKK.

¹**hint** - indication, suggestion

²**to set about** (set-set-set) - start the process of

³**the first issue came out in March 1914**

⁴**issue** - (in this case) edition

⁵**on nine counts** - with nine

different infringements

⁶**undiscouraged** - not disheartened, still enthusiastic

⁷**to embrace** - accept, adopt

⁸**did speak** - (emphatic) spoke, talked

⁹**weirdest** - strangest, most

bizarre

¹⁰**lecturing** - public speaking

¹¹**evil** - bad, malignant

¹²**Klanswomen** - women members of the KKK

¹³**priest** - churchman

¹⁴**to bring sb. up**

(bring-brought-brought) - rear sb., raise sb., prepare sb. for adult life

¹⁵**crime** - (false friend) sin, immoral act

¹⁶**to link sb. to** - connect sb. to, associate sb. with

Women's Humour

When we use the term “women’s humour” we are certainly not talking about anti-men jokes. **Indeed**¹, not all the quotes and comments on this page are even by women. What this page contains is **light-hearted**² but **insightful**³ **remarks**⁴ from a female perspective.

Having said that Michael Deacon acknowledged that we don’t operate on a **level playing field**⁵ when it comes to male and female humour:

‘When a woman says a man has a great sense of humour, she means: “I laugh at his jokes”. When a man says a woman has a great sense of humour, he means: “She laughs at my jokes”.’ Of course, this double standard **stretches into**⁶ all aspects of life, not **just**⁷ humour. Gloria Steinem **wryly**⁸ commented that “A man can be called **assertive**⁹ if he **launches**¹⁰ World War Three. A woman can be called assertive if she **puts you on hold**¹¹.” Rebecca West expressed a similar idea **remarking**⁴, “I myself have never been able to **find out**¹² what feminism is. I only know that people call me a feminist whenever I express sentiments that differentiate me from a **doormat**¹³ or a prostitute.”



Photo by Korea.net - Korean Culture and Information Service (Jeon Han)



Photo by Arvind Grover

Social Theory

Alice Thomas Ellis encapsulated an entire social theory in nine words when she said, “Men love women, women love children, children love hamsters.”

However, US comedienne Rita Rudner expressed a pessimistic view on the durability of family life (with or without a hamster) when she remarked:

When I **date**¹⁴ a guy, I think: “Is this the man I want my children to spend their weekends with?”

What Women Want in Bed

Relationship problems are often perceived to be sexual. However, Kathy Lette takes a different view: “Men are always asking what women want in bed. The answer is ‘breakfast’.”

¹**indeed** - (emphatic) in fact

²**light-hearted** - humorous, (opposite of ‘serious’)

³**insightful** - perceptive, sagacious

⁴**remark** - comment

⁵**level playing field** - situation in which everyone has a fair and

equal opportunity

⁶**to stretch into** - extend to

⁷**just** - (in this case) only

⁸**wryly** /ˈraɪli/ - ironically, sardonically

⁹**assertive** - dominant, self-assured

¹⁰**to launch** - start, cause

¹¹**to put sb. on hold** (put-put-put) - interrupt a telephone conversation (sometimes with music) and make the other person wait

¹²**to find out** (find-found-found) - discover, determine

¹³**doormat** - rectangle of

abrasive material in front of a door for people to clean their shoes on when they enter

¹⁴**to date sb.** - go out with sb., start a romantic/sexual relationship with sb.

Women, Religion & Society

The position of women in society has **waxed and waned**¹ over the centuries partly in response to the religious values dominant in each period.

Saxon Women

According to the Roman historian Tacitus, the *Anglii* were members of a seven tribe alliance that **worshipped**² a goddess, Nerthuz. Moreover, the lives of gods and humans were determined by Wyrð³. The Anglii believe that there was “something innately **holy**⁴ and prophetic in women”. Both on the continent and after the invasion of Britain, Englishwomen were highly-valued as **counsellors**⁵. 900 years after Tacitus, the chronicles tell us that “Kings and great noblemen used to **seek**⁶ the counsel” of abbesses such as Hild, abbess of Whitby.



Mediaeval Christianity

Surprisingly, after the conversion to Christianity women's lives deteriorated in some respects. **For instance**⁷, according to the new church law, if a wife was **unfaithful**⁸ then her ears and nose were cut off and her husband kept her property. **Indeed**⁹, the Early Church had an ambiguous attitude to women. The terminology of the Church is unambiguously patriarchal: 'padre', 'abbot'¹⁰ and 'pope' all derive from words meaning 'father'. Despite this, in the early Church there were women **priests**¹¹ and even **bishops**¹². However, from 494AD¹³ the Papacy took the position that women should be excluded from the **priesthood**¹⁴. Church councils in the early Middle Ages sometimes maintained that women **were soulless**¹⁵. Generally speaking, moreover, Church attitudes towards women became more and more hostile as the Middle Ages progressed. At the end of the 11th Century, for example, abbot Robert d'Abrissel said, “A woman is a **witch**¹⁶, a snake, a plague, a rat, a **rash**¹⁷, a **poison**¹⁸, a burning flame and an assistant of the Devil”. I think it's **fair to say**¹⁹ that Bobby had **issues**²⁰.

Mediaeval **monasticism**²¹ gave women an option other than marriage and **child-rearing**²², and it even offered some access to learning. The Protestant Reformation ended this option. **From that time on**²³, women who did not marry became dependents in the homes of **relatives**²⁴ and they were expected to **spin**²⁵ for their **upkeep**²⁶, which is why unmarried women are called 'spinsters' in English. What's more, many reformers, such as Martin Luther²⁷ and John Knox²⁸, were as misogynist as the Catholic hierarchy they replaced - if not more so.

¹ **to wax and wane** - (in this case) improve and decline

² **to worship** - venerate

³ **Wyrð was the goddess of destiny**

⁴ **holy** - sacred, saintly

⁵ **counsellor** - sb. who gives advice/suggestions

⁶ **to seek** (seek-sought-sought) - look for, (in this case) ask for

⁷ **for instance** - for example

⁸ **to be unfaithful** - commit adultery

⁹ **indeed** - (emphatic) in fact

¹⁰ **from Hebrew abba**

¹¹ **priest** - ordained representative of the Church

¹² **bishop** - →

¹³ **AD - Anno Domini** (after Christ), Common Era

¹⁴ **priesthood** - clergy

¹⁵ **to be soulless** - have no soul (= eternal spirit)



¹⁶ **witch** - sb. who practises black magic

¹⁷ **rash** - erythema, cutaneous eruption

¹⁸ **poison** - toxin, venom

¹⁹ **to be fair to say** - be probable

²⁰ **issues** - personal problems

²¹ **monasticism** - monasteries and convents

²² **child-rearing** - having and caring for babies

²³ **from that time on** - after that

²⁴ **relative** (n.) - relation, member

of one's extended family

²⁵ **to spin** - →

²⁶ **upkeep** - financial needs

²⁷ **(1483-1546)**

instigator of the Protestant Reformation in Germany

²⁸ **(1514-1572) instigator of the Protestant Reformation in Scotland**



The 'Modern' World

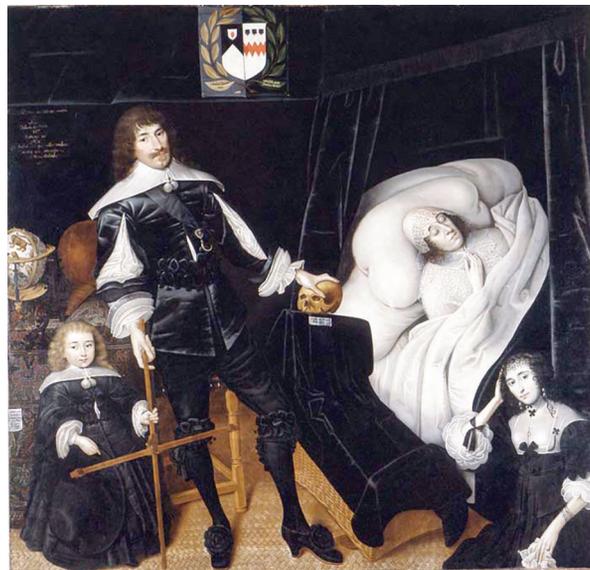
From the mid-17th Century **onwards**¹ Britain was a multi-cultural society in that Dissenters, Anglicans, Catholics and Jews coexisted in society, though the Anglicans had rights **denied to**² the other religious groups until the mid-19th Century. Generally speaking, the Dissenters were in favour of women's education and groups such as the Quakers have always had women ministers. Women had greater freedom, both to act and to express themselves during Cromwell's Puritan Interregnum (1649-60). Unfortunately, this was followed by a **male backlash**³ in the Restoration (though women were at least **allowed to**⁴ perform for the first time in the newly reopened theatres).

The big problem in terms of financial independence for women from the Restoration until the second half of the 19th Century was the social limits on the professions in which they could work (they could do **needlework**⁵, be servants or be **governesses**⁶) combined with their restricted access to education.

The 'Civil Death' of Women

The **rise**⁷ of capitalism and the decline in organized religion's social control initially offered no **solace**⁸ to women. Under English law in the 18th Century a wife ceased to exist as a separate individual; she could not **own**⁹ property independently, she could not **enter into**¹⁰ contracts and she had no rights over her own children. However, women's biggest problem **throughout**¹¹ history was the dangers of childbirth. From 1771-1831 English women **bore**¹² **an average of**¹³ six children. The risk of dying each time was about one-in-70.

- ¹from X onwards - after X
²denied to sb. - that sb. was excluded from
³male backlash - strong negative reaction by men
⁴to be allowed to - be permitted to
⁵needlework - 
⁶governess - (historical) woman employed to teach children at home



Death in childbirth.

The Counterrevolution

The French Revolution caused a **backlash**³ towards conservatism in Britain. **For instance**¹⁴, Revd. Richard Polwhele published the poem *The Unsex'd Females* in 1798 in which he characterized Mary Wollstonecraft (see pp. 37-38) as Satan. This reaction was ironic because the French Revolution, despite **overthrowing**¹⁵ the religious hierarchy, was in no way pro-women. **Indeed**¹⁶, the revolutionary National Assembly confirmed that women were "the weaker sex and should follow the '**will**¹⁷ of nature' in **pursuing**¹⁸ gentler, domestic occupations."

Towards Equality

Various Protestant groups, such as the Methodists, have **taken** the Quakers **lead**¹⁹ and introduced women ministers over the last two centuries. Anglicanism has **followed suit**²⁰, gradually introducing the ordination of women throughout the world since the 1970s; now most Anglican churches have women **bishops**²¹.

- ⁷rise - emergence
⁸solace /'solis/ - comfort
⁹to own - legally possess
¹⁰to enter into sth. - agree sth., participate in sth.
¹¹throughout - during all of
¹²to bear (bear-bore-borne) - (in this case) have
¹³an average of - typically
¹⁴for instance - for example
¹⁵to overthrow (-throw/-threw/-thrown) - supplant
¹⁶indeed - (emphatic) in fact
¹⁷will - desire
¹⁸to pursue - (in this case) do, perform
¹⁹to take sb's lead (take-took-taken) - follow sb's example
²⁰to follow suit /su:t/ - do the same thing
²¹bishop - head of a diocese

Women Saints of the British Isles

English Women Saints

In mediaeval Britain women were made saints for refusing to have sex. One example was St. Frideswide (d. 735). Frideswide was a princess who ran away for three years when a man declared his amorous intentions **towards**¹ her. The man, who obviously couldn't **take a hint**², was **eventually**³ **struck blind**⁴. Frideswide then went and founded a **nunnery**⁵ in Oxford. However, that was nothing compared to St. Etheldreda (630-679), daughter of King Anna of the East Angles (curious name for a king!). Etheldreda got married but refused to sleep with her husband. Her husband died after three years (possibly of frustration). OK, so we all make mistakes. But then our Etheldreda went and married again, this time to Egfrid, son of King Oswy of Northumbria... and refused to sleep with him, either. **Along came**⁶ St. Wilfrid and said that Etheldreda was being perfectly reasonable. **Eventually**⁷, Egfrid got bored of asking and told Etheldreda that she could go and found convents **for all he cared**⁸ - which she did. She then died of the **plague**⁹. She said it was God's **punishment**¹⁰ because she once wore a necklace¹¹ (the **Jezebel**¹²!) Given Etheldreda's **unswerving**¹³ celibacy it is somewhat ironic that her sister, wife to King Erconbert of Kent, was called St. Sexburga.



Photo by Moreau

St. Brigid



St. Gwenfrewi of Wales

Gwenfrewi (a.k.a.¹⁴ Winifride) suffered the **sexual advances**¹⁵ of Prince Caradoc ap¹⁶ Alyn. When she refused him, Caradoc cut her head off. Fortunately, St. Beuno took charge of the situation by **sticking** Gwen's head **back on**¹⁷ and causing Caradoc to be **swallowed**¹⁸ by an earthquake.

St. Brigid of Ireland

Ireland's leading female saint is **St. Brigid** (450-525). As a young girl she was a **cowherd**¹⁹ but, after being baptized by St. Patrick, she decided to dedicate her life to the Church. Brigid performed many miracles - perhaps the most curious was when she turned her bath water into beer! However, it seems that her powers were not always used for good. When **St. Conleth** decided to go on a **pilgrimage**²⁰ to Rome, Brigid was very **upset**²¹ and Conleth was killed and eaten by a **pack**²² of wolves! Brigid was also said to **drown**²³ anyone who stole her **cattle**²⁴.

¹**towards** - in relation to
²**to take a hint** (take-took-taken) - understand an insinuation
³**eventually** - (false friend) in the end
⁴**to be struck blind** - lose the ability to see
⁵**nunnery** - convent
⁶**along came X** - X appeared
⁷**eventually** - (false friend) in the end

⁸**for all he cared** - as far as he was concerned
⁹**plague** /pleig/ - contagious bacterial illness
¹⁰**punishment** - retribution
¹¹**necklace** /'neklis/ - 
¹²**Jezebel** - immoral woman
¹³**unswerving** - constant, resolute

¹⁴**a.k.a.** - also known as
¹⁵**sexual advances** - amorous propositions
¹⁶**'ap' means 'son of' and is equivalent to van in Dutch, von in German and the suffixes -son in English and -ez in Spanish**
¹⁷**to stick sth. back on** (stick-stuck-stuck) - replace sth.
¹⁸**to swallow** - devour, consume

¹⁹**cowherd** - sb. who looks after cows
²⁰**pilgrimage** - special holy trip to a place of religious importance (e.g. Jerusalem or Mecca)
²¹**to be upset** - be angry and offended
²²**pack** - group (of dogs or wolves)
²³**to drown sb.** /draun/ - suffocate sb. in water
²⁴**cattle** - cows

Did Women Once Dominate Western Art?

Picture¹, if you will², an artist. **Chances are**³ you saw a man in your **mind's eye**⁴. This is **hardly**⁵ surprising. Western art has been dominated by men for the last six centuries. **Indeed**⁶, from 1450 to 1850 there were **hardly any**⁷ women painters or sculptors. But what about the thousand years between the Fall of the Roman Empire and the Renaissance? More specifically, what can we say about the period from 1000 to 1450? Is it right to **assume**⁸, as most of us do, that mediaeval artists were **almost**⁹ exclusively men?

Anonymity

The big problem with art in the Middle Ages is that **almost**⁹ every piece of mediaeval art is anonymous; **signing**¹⁰ paintings and sculptures did not become common practice until the late Renaissance. Moreover, works of art were **as often as not**¹¹ created by a group of people **rather than**¹² an individual artist. In fact, our idea of the artist as a single creative genius is a humanist one **dating from**¹³ the Renaissance, which mediaeval people simply wouldn't recognize.

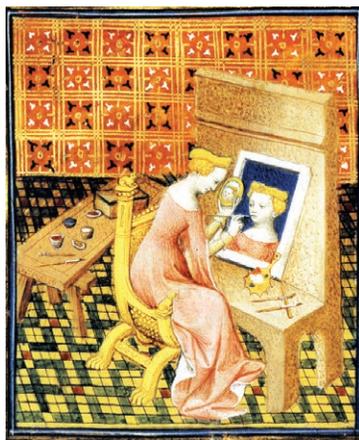
Mediaeval Women Artists

If we can't identify women artists by their **signatures**¹⁴ on works of art we have to look for them indirectly. If women artists existed we



would find representations of them in art and **mention of**¹⁵ them in the records of **guilds**¹⁶. Do such references exist? Emphatically, 'yes'. In the early mediaeval period, women artists often worked **alongside**¹⁷ men. We know this because manuscript illuminations, **embroideries**¹⁸, and sculpted **capitals**¹⁹ from the period clearly demon-

strate examples of women at work in these arts. As the pictures on these pages show, there are **plenty of**²⁰ illustrations of women artists from the late Middle Ages. Notably, we see women working in all forms of pictorial expression: as fresco painters, as miniaturists, as oil painters and as sculptors. **Likewise**²¹, documents testify to the existence of women artists. A list of occupations in Paris from 1292 mentions eight women illustrators. Similar evidence exists from Flanders to Italy. Women sculptors are mentioned in 13th-century Paris and Strasbourg.



¹to picture sb. - imagine sb., create a mental image of sb.

²if you will - (formal) please

³chances are - it is probable that

⁴to see sb. in one's mind's eye

(see-saw-seen) - imagine sb., picture sb.

⁵hardly - not very, not really

⁶indeed - (emphatic) in fact

⁷hardly any - very few

⁸to assume - (false friend)

suppose, take for granted

⁹almost - practically, nearly

¹⁰to sign sth. /sain/ - write one's name/autograph on sth.

¹¹as often as not - often, frequently, usually

¹²rather than - as opposed to,

instead of

¹³to date from - come from, originate in

¹⁴signature - one's handwritten name as authentication, autograph

¹⁵mention of - reference to

¹⁶guild/gild/ - organization of artisans

¹⁷alongside - next to, with

¹⁸embroidery (countable) - piece of needlework, picture made of coloured stitches on a piece of textile

¹⁹capital - the top part of a column

²⁰plenty of - a lot of, many, more than enough

²¹likewise - in a similar way

Mediaeval Women's Art

Famous Mediaeval Women Artists

Opus Anglicanum (i.e. **embroidery**¹) was exclusively the work of women and the Bayeux **Tapestry**² (c. 1080) – the greatest pictorial work of the High Middle Ages – was made by women artists. Although these English women embroiders are anonymous, we **do know**³ the names of a series of **outstanding**⁴ women manuscript illuminators including 10th-century Spaniard, Ende, 12th-century Germans, Guda, Diemud, Herrade of Landsberg and Hildegard of Bingen, and 12th-century Bavarian, Claricia – all of whom were **nuns**⁵. By the 13th Century most illustrated manuscripts were being produced in specialized commercial **workshops**⁶ **rather than**⁷ in monasteries and convents. It is believed that the majority of artists working in these workshops were women, though the titular artisan was usually a man (often the father of a family of artisans). Of course, the art of illuminating manuscripts died out with the advent of printing in the Renaissance. Printing shops were **almost**⁸ exclusively the domain of men.



The Bayeux Tapestry

- ¹**embroidery** -
- ²**tapestry**
/ˈtæpɪstʃəri/ - work of embroidery¹
- ³**do know** -
(emphatic) know
- ⁴**outstanding**
- exceptional



- ⁵**nun** - religious woman who lives in a convent
- ⁶**workshop** - studio, atelier
- ⁷**rather than** - instead of, as opposed to
- ⁸**almost** - practically, nearly
- ⁹**to drop sth.** - fail to hold onto sth., release one's grip on sth.,

Hildegard of Bingen



The Decline of Women's Art

The prestige of the artist grew exponentially from the 14th to the 16th century. In the Middle Ages he or she was a mere artisan; by the 1530s when Titian **dropped**⁹ his **brush**¹⁰, Emperor Charles V **bent down**¹¹ to **pick it up**¹². However, anthropology tells us that in the sexual division of labour of patriarchal societies, when the prestige of an activity **rises**¹³ significantly, the activity often becomes the exclusive domain of men. This seems to be what happened with Western art.

So, Did They?

The evidence suggests that women artists played a **far more**¹⁴ important role in the Middle Ages than they did in the Early Modern Period. If we can't say that most mediaeval artists were women, neither can we **state**¹⁵ that most mediaeval artists were men. Art was not associated with gender until being an artist acquired so much prestige in the Renaissance that men excluded women from the plastic arts.

- let go of sth.. let sth. fall
- ¹⁰(**paint**)**brush** -
- ¹¹**to bend down**
(bend-bent-bent) - bend one's knee, stoop, lean down



- ¹²**to pick sth. up** - retrieve (= take/get) sth. from the floor/ground
- ¹³**to rise** (rise-rose-risen) - increase, augment, go up
- ¹⁴**far more** - much more
- ¹⁵**to state** - say, declare

Unsuitable¹ for Ladies

On the previous page it was suggested that women were **deterred**² from becoming artists from the Renaissance until around a century ago. What forms did **this discouragement**³ take? Here are a few examples.

Dishonour

The 16th-century sculptress, Properzia de Rossi, was accused of being a **courtesan**⁴. That was nothing, however, compared to what happened to Artemisia Gentileschi (1593 - c. 1656). As a talented teenage painter she was sent to study in the studio of Agostino Tassi, a family friend. The 30-year-old artist proved the depth of his friendship by **raping**⁵ the teenage girl in 1611. In the subsequent trial Artemisia was tortured to **ensure**⁶ that she was telling the truth. Despite the revelation during the trial that Tassi had also **raped**⁵ his **sister-in-law**⁷ and planned his wife's murder, he was only sentenced to one year's imprisonment. Artemisia was humiliated and her reputation was destroyed.

Such was the stigma of professionalism in the Victorian Age that, while ladies might paint (with their



Le Laborage (1844) by Rosa Bonheur

- ¹**unsuitable** - inappropriate
²**to deter** - discourage, dissuade
³**this discouragement** - these expressions of disapproval
⁴**courtesan** - (historical) prostitute
⁵**to rape** - sexually assault

- ⁶**to ensure** - make sure, guarantee
⁷**sister-in-law** - the sister of one's spouse (or the wife of one's brother)
⁸**to allow** - permit
⁹**naked** - nude, undressed, unclothed



Jael and Sisera (1620) by Artemisia Gentileschi

husbands' permission) as amateurs, they were not **allowed**⁸ to take their creativity too seriously.

Life Drawing

On a more practical level, the emphasis in art from the Renaissance until the 20th Century was on drawing from life. However, for reasons of decorum women were excluded from any classes that involved **naked**⁹ men or women. This of course put potential women artists at a **huge**¹⁰ disadvantage in precisely the area of artistic expression that was **most highly valued**¹¹ at the time. In Britain, **for instance**¹², women students were only **allowed**⁸ to go to the life drawing classes at the Royal Academy in 1893.

Exclusion

In the late 1760s Angelica Kauffmann and Mary Moser were **among**¹³ the founding members of the Royal Academy of Art. After that, however, women were disqualified from membership of the Royal Academy for the next 150 years.

An Honorary Man

When painter Rosa Bonheur was awarded the prestigious cross of the Légion d'Honneur in 1865 by Empress Eugénie, she had to appear in **male**¹⁴ **clothing**¹⁵ so as not to **draw attention to**¹⁶ herself in the **all-male surroundings**¹⁷.

- ¹⁰**huge** - enormous, great
¹¹**most highly valued** - most prestigious
¹²**for instance** - for example
¹³**among** - amongst, (in this case) included in
¹⁴**male** - ♂

- ¹⁵**clothing** - clothes
¹⁶**to draw attention to** (draw-drew-drawn) - attract people's attention
¹⁷**all-male surroundings** - group that was otherwise exclusively men

The Literature of Anglo Women

Writing in the Dark

We know from Aldhelm, **bishop**¹ of Sherborne, that English **nuns**² were learning Latin grammar, orthography and the rules of poetry in late 7th-century England. It would seem reasonable to conclude that if they were learning how to understand Latin poetry, then they were also writing it. In the mid-8th Century the first English woman poet emerges from **the mists**³ of the Dark Ages: Berhtgyth of Hartlepool wrote a 10-line poem (in Latin) at the end of a letter to her brother. Around the same time a **nun**² called Hugeburc wrote one of the first biographies and **travelogues**⁴ written in England, *The Hodoeporicon of St. Willibald* - an **account**⁵ of the Saint's travels to the Holy Land.

We do not know the names of any Englishwomen writing in Anglo-Saxon during the Dark Ages but practically all non-religious writing in England in the High Middle Ages is anonymous. There are, however, two elegies written from a female perspective: *Wulf and Eadwacer* and *The Wife's Lament*. Each expresses a woman's sadness at being separated from her lover by the **enmity**⁶ of his tribe. Virginia Woolf⁷ wrote that "for most of history, 'Anonymous' was a woman" and at least in these two **instances**⁸ there is a strong **case**⁹ for accepting this conclusion.¹⁰ **For one**



thing¹¹ the emotions expressed by Berhtgyth in her letter to her brother are remarkably similar to those of *The Wife's Lament*.

The High Middle Ages

After the Norman Conquest of 1066 the elite in England spoke Norman French for three centuries. The greatest 'English' woman writer of this period was Marie de

France, who was active in the late 12th Century. Marie wrote narrative poems (in Norman French) which were **widely**¹² read and influenced the **development**¹³ of the mediaeval romance. She was the first woman to write successfully in the vernacular in the whole of Europe. Her **lays**¹⁴ presented **feisty**¹⁵ resolute heroines and, interestingly, she **launched**¹⁶ the idea - common in later romances - that adultery is acceptable if it is an expression of true love.

¹**bishop** - head of a diocese

²**nun** - religious woman who typically lives in a convent

³**the mists** - (in this case) uncertainty, nebula

⁴**travelogue** - chronicle of an excursion

⁵**account** - chronicle,

description

⁶**enmity** - animosity, hatred

⁷(1882-1941) Britain's greatest modernist novelist

⁸**instance** - case

⁹**case** - (in this case) argument

¹⁰**we include a modern translation of *The Wife's Lament***

by poet Eavan Boland (with extensive footnotes) as a blog post (www.yes-mag.com/wifes-lament/). You can listen to the poet reading her translation at <http://goo.gl/VdQVgk>

¹¹**for one thing** - one reason is

¹²**widely** - extensively

¹³**development** - evolution

¹⁴**lay** - narrative poem

¹⁵**feisty** /'feisti/ - determined and courageous

¹⁶**to launch** - initiate, promote

The Age of Female Illiteracy

The Late Middle Ages

Unfortunately, women's education was **largely**¹ suppressed in the late Middle Ages. The teaching of Latin in convents died out in the 14th Century and **that of**² French in the 15th Century. Women were expected to focus on **embroidery**³ as their **sole**⁴ means of artistic **expression**⁵. Even so, the period offers the first English woman playwright: Katherine Sutton († 1376), abbess of Barking Abbey, who wrote liturgical dramas. A generation or so later Julian of Norwich wrote *The Revelation of Divine Love*. This is the most original mystic writing in English of the whole mediaeval period. Julian suggests that God and Jesus have the best characteristics of both sexes and she refers explicitly to 'God the Mother' and 'Jesus the Mother'. Julian was visited in 1413 by Margery Kempe (see pp. 26-27) England's first autobiographer.



Mary Wroth

The Renaissance

The Renaissance was not a great period for English women writers - there was no female equivalent of Shakespeare. Even so, it was a woman, Anne Locke (1530-c. 1590), who wrote the first sonnet sequence in English (c. 1560). Lady



Julian of Norwich

Photo by RocketJohn

Pembroke, sister to the poet Philip Sidney, also wrote poetry which was **widely**⁶ read and **highly regarded**⁷ at the time. **Indeed**⁸, Philip Sidney's daughter, Elizabeth, was as talented a poet as her famous father, according to Ben Jonson. Sir Philip's **niece**⁹, Mary Wroth, was also an **accomplished**¹⁰ romance writer and sonneteer. Mary even wrote an (unpublished) pastoral play: *Love's Victory* (c. 1620). However, Wroth was not the first English woman playwright of the Renaissance. That honour goes to Elizabeth Cary, Lady Falkland who wrote *Mariam, Faire Queene of Jewry* in 1604 (published 1613).

¹**largely** - mostly, in general

²**that of** - (in this case) the teaching of

³**embroidery** -

⁴**sole** - only



⁵**means of artistic expression**

- way of expressing oneself artistically

⁶**widely** - extensively

⁷**highly regarded** - admired, well considered

⁸**indeed** - (emphatic) in fact

⁹**one's niece** - the daughter of one's brother or sister

¹⁰**accomplished** - successful, talented

The Female Ascendancy

Aphra Behn

The greatest English woman writer of the 17th Century is undoubtedly Aphra Behn. She wrote 22 plays, 17 of which were produced. She also published 12 works of prose fiction which influenced the emergence of the novel in the 18th Century. Behn was often **startlingly**¹ original: her 'novel' *Oroonoko* (1688) was the first work in English literature to have an entirely likeable black hero. Together with all her literary **accomplishments**² Behn worked as a spy in Antwerp³ for Charles II.

The Novel

The advent of the novel, combined with a gradual expansion in girls' education, is what **allowed**⁴ women's literature to **come of age**⁵. Novels were initially considered so **lowbrow**⁶ that it was even acceptable for women to write them. By the time novels **moved centre-stage**⁷, women novelists had already established themselves as 'masters' of the genre. It was in this genre that women **achieved**⁸ parity with literary men: the works of Dickens, Melville, Stevenson and Hardy are at least **matched**⁹, if not **overshadowed**¹⁰, by those of Austen, the Brontës, Gaskell and Eliot. **Success**¹¹ in novels enabled women to **challenge**¹² male supremacy in the **highbrow**¹³ genre of poetry. Robert Browning, the greatest of Victorian poets, considered his wife, Elizabeth Barrett Browning, a better poet than himself and said so publicly. It should come as no surprise that at the beginning of the 21st Century the British poet laureate is a woman (Carol Ann Duffy) and that the best-selling book series ever was written by a woman (the Harry Potter books). Having said that, even in our **enlightened**¹⁴ times, J.K. Rowling had to **hide**¹⁵ the fact that she was a woman behind those initials in order to **appeal to**¹⁶ boys.



J K Rowling

Photo by the US Executive Office of the President



George Eliot



Aphra Behn by Mary Beale



Elizabeth Gaskell

¹**startlingly** - surprisingly

²**accomplishment** - achievement, triumph

³**a port city in modern-day Belgium**

⁴**to allow** - permit, enable

⁵**to come of age**

(come-came-come) - become fully established

⁶**lowbrow** - unsophisticated, (opposite of 'highbrow'¹³)

⁷**to move centre-stage** - (in this case) become the primary focus of literature

⁸**to achieve** - attain, get

⁹**to match** - equal

¹⁰**to overshadow** - eclipse

¹¹**success** - (false friend) positive results, triumphs

¹²**to challenge** - question, dispute

¹³**highbrow** - intellectual, refined

¹⁴**enlightened** - advanced, open-minded

¹⁵**to hide** (hide-hid-hidden) - conceal, camouflage

¹⁶**to appeal to** - be attractive for



22 pages
of **exercises**

SPECIAL OFFER

*Free postage and packing in Spain. For more information on this special offer and all our products, please consult our webpage.

NIGHT DREAMS SLEEP



How to Buy Your English Supplement (Yes)



All versions of the magazine include an hour's original recorded material. The special collector's edition and the digital magazine will include a special download code with each issue which will allow you to download the corresponding audio files.



If you have any questions regarding subscriptions or would like more information about our magazine, please visit www.yes-mag.com or contact us at info@yes-mag.com

Visit our on-line store:
www.yes-mag.com

1. Digital magazine

- » Individual issues: €4
- » Annual subscription (10 issues): €30

2. Special Collectors' edition (print magazine)

- » Individual issues:
€9.95 + postage and packing*
- » Annual subscription (10 issues) +
access to corresponding digital issues:
€80 + postage and packing*

The collectors' edition is also available from official stockists in Spain (see our website for complete list).

3. Yes Magazine + the iPad app

Available in the iTunes store.
For further information on the app please visit www.yes-mag.com.

Bette Davies

by Marina Carresi

Domesticity's all right if it isn't carried too far... a **bitch**¹ is more memorable than a sweet housewife.

BETTE DAVIS

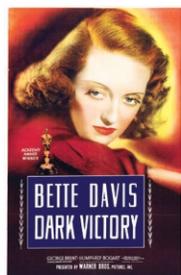
'Go hang yourself, then!'

Bette /'beti/ Davis signed for Warner Brothers in 1931 a few months after Jack Warner had **taken over**² production there. Davis appeared in eight movies during her first year at Warner but she didn't find the projects very stimulating. The following year she appeared in seven more pictures. But Hollywood was not satisfying her ambitions. Moreover, Ruthie, her mother, was spending capriciously and by this time her sister Bobby had suffered a **nervous breakdown**³. To make **matters**⁴ worse Ruthie had **urged**⁵ Bette into a marriage with a man she really didn't love. After the wedding she and Bobby had **headed to**⁶ California and both had **set up house**⁷ with the **newlyweds**⁸, which of course didn't help **matters**⁴. In 1933 Bette had had her first abortion. The marriage was **doomed**⁹.

'Ugly' Bette

This was the unhappy situation Davis found herself in when she read the screenplay adaptation of W. Somerset Maugham's novel *Of Human Bondage* (1915) in the autumn of 1933 and she saw in Mildred Rogers, the female lead, her first **shot at**

greatness¹⁰ in Hollywood. It was the RKO, however, not Warner, who were making the film and Davis could not get the role without Jack Warner's permission to **loan**¹¹ her. He refused because he thought that this character was a route to 'professional suicide'. She disagreed and, when she **realized**¹² she couldn't convince him, she **camped out**¹³ outside his office every day at 7 a.m. Unable to **curb**¹⁴ her **stubbornness**¹⁵, the movie **mogul**¹⁶ told her, "Go **hang**¹⁷ yourself, then!" - one of Davis's own favourite phrases. Davis **hired**¹⁸ a Cockney cleaning woman to perfect Mildred's accent. She ignored the director's suggestions and applied her own **make-up**¹⁹ for the final scenes in which Mildred is dying of **consumption**²⁰. Before *Of Human Bondage* (1934), no actress had ever chosen to look ugly on camera. It was the long-awaited **turning point**²¹ in Davis's **career**²². Though it was her 22nd film, most critics **praised**²³ her as a 'newcomer'. *Of Human Bondage* altered not just Davis's career but also Hollywood's conceptions of women. Mildred Rogers was the first anti-heroine in Hollywood history.



¹**bitch** - (in this case) vindictive woman

²**to take over** (take-took-taken) - take control of, start to direct

³**nervous breakdown** - psychological collapse

⁴**matters** - (in this case) the situation

⁵**to urge** - pressure, incite

⁶**to head to** - go to

⁷**to set up house** (set-set-set)

- establish one's home

⁸**newlyweds** - two people who have recently married each other

⁹**to be doomed** - be destined to be a fiasco

¹⁰**shot at greatness** - opportunity to become a star

¹¹**to loan sb.** - lend sb., permit sb.

to work temporarily in another company

¹²**to realize** - (false friend) become conscious

¹³**to camp out** - besiege, picket

¹⁴**to curb** - suppress

¹⁵**stubbornness** - obstinacy, obduracy

¹⁶**mogul** - tycoon, magnate

¹⁷**to hang sb.** -



¹⁸**to hire sb.** - take sb. on, employ sb.

¹⁹**make-up** - theatrical cosmetics

²⁰**consumption** - (in this case) tuberculosis

²¹**turning point** - inflexion

²²**career** - (false friend) professional trajectory

²³**to praise sb.** - express admiration for sb.

The 'Three Musketeers'

Davis's parents came from **Yankee**¹ families dating back to the 17th Century. Davis's father, Harlow Morrell Davis, descended from Welsh Puritans; her mother Ruth Favor, from **Huguenot**² pioneers. They met as children and married just before Harlow entered Harvard Law School. Ruth was a **strong-willed**³ **tomboy**⁴ who dreamt of becoming an actress. However, she realized that her dreams were impractical, so she did what she had been educated to do: she married a clever, ambitious, **patrician**⁵. After few weeks she announced she was pregnant and **rejected**⁶ her husband's suggestion that she have an abortion because it was too soon for him to **provide for**⁷ a family of three.⁸

A Star is Born and Raised⁹

Ruth Elizabeth Davis born on 5th April, 1908, and she **claimed not to**¹⁰ "recall"¹¹ one moment of affection between her **parents**¹². In 1909 Barbara Harrier 'Bobby' was born. Betty was so offended by the appearance of a rival **sibling**¹³ that she **chopped off**¹⁴ her baby sister's hair. This rivalry **set the tone for**¹⁵ the siblings' unsisterly relationship **throughout**¹⁶ their lives. In 1911 the day Harlow took a well-paid job, Ruthie checked into a **sanatorium**¹⁷. Things didn't improve when she returned but Harlow didn't leave until 1918, just



Bette Davis in *Now, Voyager*



before Betty's 10th birthday. The **lack of**¹⁸ a father figure during her adolescence was overcompensated for by a mother who saw in her elder daughter her **means**¹⁹ to **vicarious**²⁰ salvation. Between 1918 and 1930 the "Three musketeers"²¹ moved across **the Eastern Seaboard**²² an estimated **80 times**²³. Ruth worked as a governess, a dormitory cleaner, a **boarding-school house mother**²⁴, anything and everything to **place**²⁵ her daughters in the best schools for the lowest **fees**²⁶.

¹**Yankee** (adj.) - (in US English) from New England

²**Huguenot** - French Protestant

³**strong-willed** - headstrong, obstinate

⁴**tomboy** - girl who enjoys activities that are traditionally associated with boys

⁵**patrician** - (in this case) upper-class man

⁶**to reject** - not accept

⁷**to provide for** - maintain

⁸**the suggestion was ironic as abortion was illegal at the time and he was training to become a lawyer**

⁹**to raise sb.** - rear sb., bring sb. up, prepare a child for adult life

¹⁰**claimed not to** - declared that she could not

¹¹**to recall** - remember

¹²**one's parents** - one's mother and father

¹³**sibling** - (in this case) sister

¹⁴**to chop sth. off** - cut sth. off, eliminate sth. by cutting

¹⁵**to set the tone for** (set-set-set) - establish the norm for

¹⁶**throughout** - during all of

¹⁷**sanatorium** - infirmary, convalescent home

¹⁸**lack of** - absence of

¹⁹**means** - way

²⁰**vicarious** - indirect, through another person

²¹**the term Ruth preferred to**

use to refer to herself and her two daughters

²²**the Eastern Seaboard** - the US States on the Atlantic coast

²³**80 times** - on 80 occasions

²⁴**boarding-school house mother** - maternal figure in a private residential school

²⁵**to place** - put

²⁶**fees** - payments made for a service

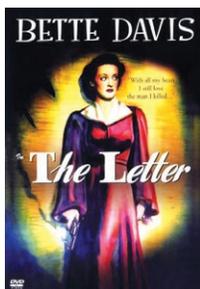
Treading the Boards¹

In 1921, Ruth Davis moved to New York with her daughters and, after enrolling in a photography course in Manhattan, she worked as a portrait photographer. In 1926 18-year-old Betty, now Bette (see box) saw a production of Ibsen's *The Wild Duck* and decided there and then that she was determined to become an actress. She enrolled at the John Murray Anderson School of Theatre, and studied dance with Martha Graham. It was there that Davis began to develop her **skills**² as an actor and adopted Graham's controversial theories about the **link**³ between physicality and self-expression, which would become central to Bette's technique.

Davis auditioned for George Cukor's theatre company and, although he was not very impressed, he gave Bette her first paid acting job; a one-week **stint**⁴ as a chorus girl in the play *Broadway*.

Bette was chosen for the play *The Earth Between* at the Provincetown Playhouse⁵ as 1928 **drew to a close**⁶. Virgil Geddes two-act play is a controversial tale about a young girl and her incestuous relationship with her father.

A few months before the Wall Street Crash Davis was chosen to play Hedwig, in a touring production of *The Wild Duck*. However, **a fortnight**⁷ before she was going to start, she **came down**



Bette Davis in *The Little Foxes*

with⁸ a severe case of **measles**⁹. Even though Bette was **feverish**¹⁰ and **bedbound**¹¹, her mother coached her through her **lines**¹² in order that she wouldn't miss her big break. By some miracle of determination, Davis recovered the morning of the play's premiere. It was a **smash hit**¹³ and so was the young lead. Bette got her Broadway debut in 1929 in Martin Flavi's comedy *Broken Dishes*, and followed it with Lawton Campbell's *Solid South*. A Universal Studios **talent scout**¹⁴ saw her perform in the latter comedy and invited her to Hollywood for a screen test. Six months later, Jack Warner offered her a five year contract. He became her **surrogate**¹⁵ father in **fonder**¹⁶ moments and a tyrannical **overlord**¹⁷ on other occasions.

'Bette' Noire

In the early 1920s teenage Betty Davis changed the spelling of her first name to 'Bette' after Honoré de Balzac's *La Cousine Bette* on the suggestion of an erudite neighbour. However, the French name is **actually**¹⁸ pronounced /bet/, not /'beti/. Ironically, when Ruth Midler named her new-born daughter 'Bette' in 1945, she knew the correct French pronunciation but was ignorant of the way Bette Davis pronounced her name, even though she was **naming** her daughter **for**¹⁹ the Hollywood star. That's why we have actresses called Bette /'beti/ Davis and Bette /bet/ Midler!

¹**to tread the boards** (tread-trod-trodden) - appear on stage, act in the theatre

²**skills** - abilities, talents

³**link** - connection

⁴**stint** - session, job

⁵**home to experimental plays by important modernists**

such as Eugene O'Neill and e.e. cummings

⁶**to draw to a close** (draw-drew-drawn) - end

⁷**a fortnight** - two weeks

⁸**to come down with** (come-came-come) - be infected with

⁹**measles** /'mi:zəl/ - rubeola, a viral disease

¹⁰**feverish** - suffering from a fever/high temperature

¹¹**bedbound** - confined to bed

¹²**one's lines** - one's text from a play

¹³**smash hit** - triumph

¹⁴**talent scout** - head-hunter for actors

¹⁵**surrogate** - substitute

¹⁶**fonder** - more affectionate

¹⁷**overlord** - master

¹⁸**actually** - (false friend) in fact

¹⁹**to name A for B** - give A B's name to honour B

The Queen of Wilful Women

The **success**¹ of *The Wild Duck* was a measure of Davis's determination. Moments before the play opened in Boston, Bette's **fiancé**², Charlie Ainsley, broke off their **engagement**³ in an act of monumental **selfishness**⁴ (or at least epic **bad timing**⁵). But then again, as Davis declared at the end of her life: "I've always been an actress first and a woman second".

Who was Bette Davis and why was she so important for women? One of the earliest profiles said: "She is ambitious, courageous and **uncomplaining**⁶ with a **distinct mind of her own**⁷". Another later revealed, "Davis dislikes equally the **stuffed shirts**⁸ and glamour girls of Hollywood [...] Informality is her **keynote**⁹ - she no longer **dyes**¹⁰ her hair and never diets".

Davis came to embody the American dream of the girl-next-door becoming a star. For female audiences it **mattered**¹¹ that she was successful not for her beauty but for her honesty, persistence and cleverness. Davis gave 'normal' women hope. Bette's apogee was between 1940 and 1945; it was no coincidence that this was the period of the Second World War. The **outbreak**¹² of World War Two created a tremendous new demand for strong

female examples **on screen**¹³. As **the draft**¹⁴ **drained**¹⁵ the country of its movie-going men, the women who **remained**¹⁶ - war **widows**¹⁷, anxious wives, **spinsters**¹⁸ and adolescent girls - were all driven into intimidating positions of autonomy and they **sought instruction**¹⁹ and consolation from **headstrong**²⁰ role models: and Bette Davis was 'the Queen of **Wilful**²¹ Women'.

The Twilight²² of the Goddess

After the war the USA was **swept**²³ by a conservative **backlash**²⁴ which wanted the newly independent woman out of the munitions factories and back in the kitchen. The "women's pictures" that Davis had pioneered fell out of favour as husbands and boyfriends insisted on watching 'passive blondes'²⁵ like Marilyn Monroe and Doris Day. "Women loved me but many of their husbands hated me". Even so, Bette Davis made another 33 movies over the next 50 years. In 1977 she was named the second greatest Hollywood actress of all time²⁶ by the American Film Institute.

Further reading: *Bette Davis* by Laura Moser



The Virgin Queen



All About Eve

¹**success** - (false friend) triumph

²**fiancé** - man one has agreed to marry

³**engagement** - agreement to marry

⁴**selfishness** - egotism

⁵**bad timing** - choosing the wrong moment

⁶**uncomplaining** - patient, (opposite of 'problematic')

⁷**with a distinct a mind of one's**

own - with the ability to think for oneself

⁸**stuffed shirt** - pompous person

⁹**keynote** - essential characteristic

¹⁰**to dye sth.** - colour sth.

¹¹**to matter** - be important

¹²**outbreak** - start, beginning

¹³**on screen** - in the cinema, in the movies

¹⁴**the draft** - military service

¹⁵**to drain** - empty

¹⁶**to remain** - stay behind, (in this case) continue to inhabit the USA

¹⁷**war widow** - woman whose husband has died in battle

¹⁸**spinster** - older woman who has never married

¹⁹**to seek instruction** (seek-sought-sought) - look for guidance

²⁰**headstrong** - wilful, obstinate

²¹**wilful** - ungovernable, obstinate

²²**twilight** - decline

²³**to sweep** (sweep-swept-swept) - inundate

²⁴**backlash** - strong negative reaction

²⁵**the term used by Bette Davis**

²⁶**after Katharine Hepburn**

Swearing & Sexism

As a result of the activities of misogynist internet trolls, insults against women are more evident today than at any time in living memory.

Insulting Women

In contrast to the languages of many other European countries English makes little use of blasphemy for **swearing**¹. Swearwords in English refer mostly to sex, with **minor roles for**² defecation and urination. The most obvious example is the **ubiquitous**³ 'fuck(ing)'. However, there are many more and it is interesting to see how they are used. For example, it is noticeable that the slang words for **male**⁴ genitalia - 'dick' or 'prick' - are minor terms of abuse (implying that someone is irritating), while the slang word for female genitalia - 'cunt' - is about the most serious insult one man can call another.

Incredibly, English has now **amassed**⁵ over 2000 expressions to refer to women in a sexually-derogatory way⁶. This is **in no way**⁷ **matched**⁸ by a similar number of sexually-derogatory terms for men, even if we include

insults relating to male homosexuality. The process by which this enormous vocabulary was accumulated gives an **object lesson**⁹ in the processes of sexism.

A Slippery Slope¹⁰

One of the surprising characteristics of words that refer to women is that they tend to deteriorate. Take the term '**mistress**'. It is used frequently in Shakespeare's *The Merry Wives of Windsor*. At that time it meant a married woman, and **indeed**¹¹ it is the origin of our abbreviation 'Mrs.' (which we pronounce 'missus' /'misiz/). Now 'mistress' implies the female lover of a married man. There has been no equivalent decline in the corresponding **male**⁴ term, 'master'. The same has happened with '**dame**'. In Britain this is an honorary title, equivalent to 'sir'.¹² However, in US English it is a **rather**¹³ derogatory term for a woman. There is no negative connotation in 'sir' anywhere. **Yet another**¹⁴ case is '**madam**'; it was once **just**¹⁵ a term of respect, much like 'lady'; it is now also used to refer to a woman who **runs**¹⁶ a **brothel**¹⁷.



A brothel

¹**swearing** - (the use of) offensive language

²**minor roles for** - the peripheral importance of

³**ubiquitous** - universal, (in this case) heard very frequently

⁴**male** - ♂

⁵**to amass** - accumulate

⁶**according to Kate Burridge's**

excellent Blooming English [Cambridge, 2004]

⁷**in no way** - (emphatic) not

⁸**to match** - equal, correspond

⁹**object lesson** - impressive practical example of some principle or idea

¹⁰**slippery slope** - bad situation which, after it has started, will

probably get much worse, a tendency to deteriorate

¹¹**indeed** - (emphatic) in fact

¹²**for example, Nancy Reagan caused a diplomatic scandal when she said of Raisa Gorbachova (the First Lady of Russia). "Who does that dame think she is?"**

¹³**rather** - (in this case) quite, reasonably

¹⁴**yet another** - (emphatic) another

¹⁵**just** - (in this case) only, simply

¹⁶**to run** (run-ran-run) - (in this case) manage, direct, administer

¹⁷**brothel** /'brəʊəl/ - house of prostitution

From Housewives to Prostitutes

Pejoration

As we have seen, terms referring to females tend to acquire a more and more pejorative meaning as time passes. The classic misogynistic insult against women is to accuse them of promiscuity. The dual process can be seen in the word **'slut'**, which is now a slang term meaning a prostitute or promiscuous woman. Originally, in the 14th Century it simply meant a **scruffy**¹ young woman. A word with a similar connotation is **'hussy'**. This word appeared in the 16th Century as an abbreviation of **'housewife'**²! By the beginning of the 17th Century that **arch-misogynist**³, Iago, was **punning on**⁴ its potentially offensive meaning (at *Othello*, II. i. 112). Even the most offensive words for sexually-promiscuous women have benign origins. **'Whore'** - an aggressive word for a prostitute - is etymologically related to Latin *carus* (= dear) and Old Irish *cara* (= friend), *caraim* (= I love!)⁵ Before **reaching**⁶ its current meaning of 'prostitute' it meant a **lover of either sex**⁷.

The Feminizing of Insults

The last example illustrates another interesting process; terms of abuse that once referred to men and women **have often come to be used**⁸ only for women. **For instance**⁹, a **'shrew'**¹⁰ was once a **spiteful**¹¹ person, **only later did it become**¹² a spiteful woman or a **scold**¹³ (as in Shakespeare's *The Taming*¹⁴ of the Shrew). The same thing happened with the insult **'cow'**; in the 16th Century it referred to a timid person of either sex. Now it



© Tomas Castelazo, www.tomascastelazo.com Wikimedia Commons CC-BY-SA-3.0

has become female-specific and means a stupid and/or obnoxious woman (but not specifically an obese woman).

Not Just English

This process does not **just**¹⁵ affect English. Many European languages distinguish between the male and female forms of **cognates**¹⁶ of 'courtesan'. The male form¹⁷ means someone who is part of the royal court - what we would call a 'courtier' in English, while the female form¹⁸ means a prostitute with upper class or aristocratic clients - the meaning of 'courtesan' in English.

¹ **scruffy** - untidy, badly dressed

² **housewife** - homemaker (*US English*), woman who does not work outside the home

³ **arch-misogynist** - archetypal woman-hater

⁴ **to pun on** - make a play on words with, use wordplay about

⁵ **the etymology is complicated but 'whore' is related to 'carus' etc. in a**

similar way to that in which 'heart' is related to 'cardiac' and 'hundred' to 'century'

⁶ **to reach** - arrive at, come to

⁷ **a lover of either sex** - a male lover or a female lover

⁸ **have come to be used** - have been used in the end

⁹ **for instance** - for example

¹⁰ **shrew** - (*literally*) →

¹¹ **spiteful** - vindictive, malicious,

vitriolic

¹² **only later did it become...** - it became... only later

¹³ **scold** (n.) - nag, woman who criticizes vociferously.

Interestingly, 'scold'

originally meant 'a (male or female) poet'

¹⁴ **taming** /'teimɪn/ - domestication, subjugation

¹⁵ **just** - (*in this case*) only

¹⁶ **cognate** - etymologically related word

¹⁷ **e.g. courtesan in French or cortesano in Spanish**

¹⁸ **e.g. courtisane in French or cortesana in Spanish**

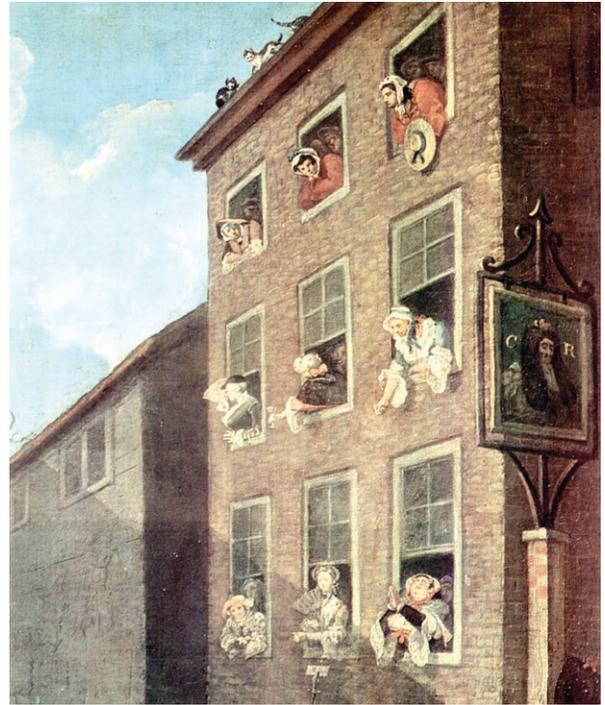


The Process Continues

The explanation **so far**¹ might suggest that these processes of pejoration happened **long ago**². Unfortunately, nothing could be **further from the truth**³. At the beginning of the 20th Century **'broad'** and **'floozy'** meant simply 'young woman' in US English. However, they gradually came to mean - you guessed it - prostitute or promiscuous woman. 80 years ago a **'tramp'** in US English was a male **vagrant**⁴ (and it still means this in British English). However, it began to be used to mean 'promiscuous woman' in the USA - giving an interesting double meaning to Disney's classic canine cartoon movie, *The Lady and the Tramp*! Until the 1950s a **'bimbo'** was a small child (from Italian *bambino*). However, it quickly declined and came to mean 'an attractive but stupid woman'.



LibertePussyRiot:31 by Fibonacci Blue - www.flickr.com/photos/fibonacciblue/7805135374



A cat house

Troublesome⁵ Words

All this is not just an abstract etymological analysis. The fact that there are so many terms which can be used as insults against women means that English is a bit of a **minefield**⁶ for those - like you, I hope - who wish to **avoid**⁷ misogynistic language.

One area in which this problem is obvious is animal insults. We have already seen (on p. 67) how 'cow' does not simply refer to a bovine beast. Similarly, 'bitch' is a perfectly correct word for a female dog, but it is now undoubtedly more frequently used as an insult. **Indeed**⁸, the feminine is so **contemptible**⁹ in misogynistic slang that 'bitch' is now a term of disdain used by a man against another man¹⁰, too.

You **face**¹¹ a similar problem with 'pussy'. Formally, it is a **term of endearment**¹² for a cat. However, cats have a long association with women (and **witches**¹³) - a 'cat house' is a **brothel**¹⁴ - and 'pussy' also means vagina in English slang.¹⁵

¹**so far** - until now, up to this point

²**long ago** - in the distant past

³**further from the truth** - less true

⁴**vagrant** - vagabond, homeless person

⁵**troublesome** - problematic

⁶**minefield** - (metaphorical) area that presents many unexpected dangers

⁷**to avoid** - (in this case) not use

⁸**indeed** - (emphatic) in fact

⁹**contemptible** - ignominious,

detestable

¹⁰**implying that he is servile**

¹¹**to face** - confront, (in this case) have

¹²**term of endearment** - affectionate term

¹³**witch** - woman who practises

black magic

¹⁴**brothel** /'brəʊəl/ - house of prostitution

¹⁵**you can avoid the ambiguity by using 'puss' /pus/, or 'pussycat' to refer to your favourite feline**

GRAMMAR

This section of the magazine offers...

The Language of Women

- 70 **Grammar Focus:** Gender Issues
Exercise 27
-
- 71 **Sex and Gender**
Exercise 27
-
- 72 **Masculine and Feminine People**
Exercise 27
-
- 73 **Word Building:** feminine affixes
Exercise 27
-
- 74 **Girls' Names**
Exercise 25
-
- 75 **Celtic versions of international names**
Exercise 25
-
- 76 **Gaelic names**
Exercise 25
-
- 77 **Brythonic names**
Exercise 25
-
- 78 **US vs. UK:** galls and dolls
Exercise 26
-
- 79 **Pronunciation:** womanly words
Exercise 13
-
- 80 **Idioms:** women and children first
81 **Idioms:** women's idioms
Exercise 19
-
- 82 **False Friends:** Gender & false friends
Exercise 20
-

- 83 **Phrasal Verbs & Humour**
Exercise 18

- 84 **The YES community**

- 86 **Picture Description**

GRAMMAR EXTENSION

- 70-73 **Speak:** is your own language more or less sexist than English? Or does its sexism simply present itself in a different way? Are there words or word forms that are associated with one or other gender? For example, do women tend to use more diminutives? Is talking in a 'masculine' way associated with being 'professional' in work contexts in your culture?

Watch: here is a short *Financial Times* TV discussion of how military and tribal language affects the environment in the workplace:

<http://goo.gl/zum3Ee>

AUDIO EXTENSION

- Track 1** **Speak:** how do you travel to work? What factors determine this choice?
-
- Track 2** **Speak:** what is the minimum space a family needs to live in in your culture? Is it important to have your own private space?
-
- Track 3** **Speak:** how would you solve 'the recliner wars'?
-
- Tracks 5-8** **Speak:** how do you envision that the world will have changed in 50 years' time? Will life be better or worse?

Gender Issues

In German, a young lady has no sex, but a turnip¹ has.

MARK TWAIN

English is radically different from all other major European languages in that it has adopted what is known as 'natural gender' and has **rejected**² 'grammatical gender'. **Natural gender** is the very simple idea that we should only consider masculine or feminine those things (i.e.³ people and animals) that have... **how can I put this...?**⁴ sexual attributes. All other inanimate objects are considered genderless, i.e. neuter.

By contrast, with **grammatical gender** everything is **ascribed**⁵ one of two (masculine or feminine) or three (masculine, feminine or neuter)⁶ genders according to some **arcane**⁷ system. When you learn German 'the sun' is feminine, 'the moon' is masculine and 'girls' are neuter. When you learn Spanish 'the sun' is masculine, 'the moon' is feminine and 'girls' are too (curiously!). While the native speakers of each language think they "understand" the gender given in each case, people who speak other languages are **bemused**⁸. Although you won't have noticed unless you've tried to learn a language with grammatical gender, this situation is, in fact, a great advantage for people who want to learn English as their second language (and you should be **grateful**⁹ that we had such a good idea!).

¹**turnip** - (*Brassica rapa*) big white globular root vegetable →

²**to reject** - repudiate, abandon, (opposite of 'accept')

³i.e. - *id est*, that is

⁴**How can I put this...?** - what would be an inoffensive way of saying this...?

⁵**to ascribe** - give

⁶**this is, in fact, a simplification. Some African**



languages (such as Fula) have 16 genders!

⁷**arcane** - mysterious, enigmatic, obscure

⁸**to be bemused** - be bewildered, be confused, be disconcerted

⁹**grateful** - thankful

¹⁰**Anglo-Saxon** - the Germanic language used in England between 450-c. 1100; also called 'Old English'

¹¹**modern English people's ancestors** - the ancestors of

A Germanic child: masculine, feminine or neuter?



Photo by Nikodem Zielinski

Why Did English Lose Grammatical Gender?

It is all too easy to laugh at the fact that a German 'wife' (*das Weib*) is neuter but the fact is that **Anglo-Saxon**¹⁰ had grammatical gender too. And yes, the girls, wives, sons and children of **modern English people's ancestors**¹¹ were all neuter. **Indeed**¹², an Anglo-Saxon woman (*se wifmann*) was masculine^{13, 14}.

There are several reasons why English lost its grammatical gender. One is that the gender of an Anglo-Saxon noun was more obvious from the adjectives and/or **demonstratives**¹⁵ that accompanied them than from the nouns themselves¹⁶. This meant that when the **inflections**¹⁷ at the end of adjectives and demonstratives **withered**¹⁸ remembering the grammatical gender of nouns became increasingly difficult.

today's English people

¹²**indeed** - (*emphatic*) in fact

¹³**because the second part of the word (*mann*) was masculine**

¹⁴**this type of illogical gendering seems to have existed for a very long time. In Proto-Indo-European - the language from which most European and many Asian languages evolved - 'sister-in-law' (*snusos**) was almost certainly masculine!**

¹⁵**demonstratives** - (*in this case*) the predecessors of 'the', 'this', 'these', 'that', 'those'

¹⁶**so, for example, you know that *Pæt wif* is neuter from the *Pæt* (= that) not from the *wif* (= wife)**

¹⁷**inflections** - changes to the end of a word to reflect gender, number and case

¹⁸**to wither** - (typically of plants) die gradually

Sex & Gender

Sex Is Not Enough

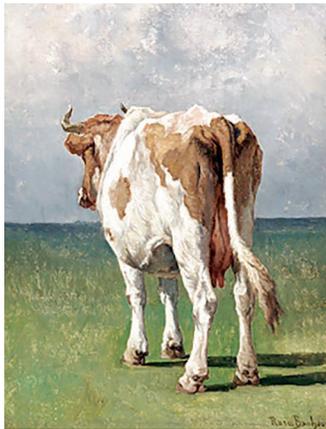
However, even people and animals that have sexual attributes can be considered neutral. When someone **knocks on the door**¹ we say “*Who is it?*”. This is not because we believe that an object is knocking. It is simply that – **since**² we don’t know if it is a man or a woman – we use ‘it’ as a neutral form. People who are native speakers of other languages are often shocked to hear native English speakers referring to babies as ‘it’, but again, if the sex of the infant is not clear this is a neutral option.

Animals with names that we know (i.e. pets) tend to be referred to as ‘he’ or ‘she’ but other animals are usually called ‘it’. This is even the case with animals like cows or bulls whose sexual attributes are **plain to see**³.

Attributive Gender

Attributive gender – referring to a ship as feminine, or to the sun and the moon as masculine or feminine – is personification and a **matter**⁴ of rhetoric, not grammar. **Stated**⁵ in another way, a ship is ‘it’ (i.e. neuter) and if you want to be pompously poetic and call it ‘she’ we are tolerant enough to **allow**⁶ you to do it, but it certainly isn’t more correct:

- *God Bless this ship and all who sail in her!*



She or it?

Painting by Rosa Bonheur

¹**to knock on the door** – hit a door with a closed hand in order to attract the attention of the person or people who is/are on the other side

²**since** – (in this case) given that, because

³**plain to see** – obvious

⁴**matter** – question, subject

⁵**to state** – say, express, (in this



How old is he/it?

Photo by Leonardo L Carresi

A Note on Use

In theory the words ‘gender’, ‘masculine’ and ‘feminine’ are grammatical terms and should not be used in other contexts. Certainly, ‘male’ and ‘female’ are better terms in a non-grammatical reference:

- *A lioness is a female (not ‘feminine’) lion*”.

However, ‘gender’ is increasingly used in contemporary English to refer to **issues**⁷ relating to the interaction between men and women. This is presumably **to avoid**⁸ the term ‘sex’. Purists **reject**⁹ this usage; for example **R. L. Trask**¹⁰ says, “*You should not use ‘gender’ when you mean ‘sex’: write “She was discriminated against because of her sex”, not “... because of her gender” – Using gender for sex sounds prissy*”¹¹. Although this may be true, the practice is very frequent.

case) explain

⁶**to allow** – permit

⁷**issue** (n.) – question, controversy

⁸**to avoid** – not use

⁹**to reject** – repudiate, abandon,

(opposite of ‘accept’)

¹⁰**in Mind The Gaffe, [Penguin Books]**

¹¹**prissy** – prudish, Victorian, po-faced

Masculine & Feminine People

A number of nouns referring to people's occupations or roles have masculine and feminine forms. For example

MEN	WOMEN
bachelor ¹	spinster
bridegroom	bride ²
earl ³	countess
hero	heroine
husband	wife
landlord ⁴	landlady
masseur ⁵	masseuse
monk ⁶	nun
nephew ⁷	niece
uncle	aunt
widowers ⁸	widow ⁹

Nevertheless, it should be noted that there is a strong tendency **towards**¹⁰ gender-neutral terms such as 'flight attendant' (previously 'stewardess' or 'air hostess') or 'fire-fighter' (instead of 'fireman').

Non-gender-specific Terms

In fact, most terms for people and professions are not gender-specific. Examples include:

baker ¹¹	butcher ¹²	chemist ¹³
colleague ¹⁴	cook	cousin ¹⁵

¹**bachelor** - unmarried man
²**bride** - woman who is getting married

³**earl** - English equivalent of a 'count'

⁴**landlord** - owner of rented property

⁵**masseur** - man who gives massages

⁶**monk** /mɒŋk/ - religious man who lives in a monastery

⁷**nephew** - the son of one's sibling

⁸**widower** - a man whose wife has died

⁹**widow** - a woman whose husband has died

¹⁰**towards** - in the direction of



Bride and groom

Photo by Marina Carresi

doctor	farmer	fishmonger ¹⁶
friend	journalist	lawyer
leader	minister	relative ¹⁷
secretary	student	teacher
teenager	tobacconist	vicar ¹⁸ .

Where these words are used you have to determine the sex of the person (if it is important) from the context:

- Beverly is a dentist. She **trained**¹⁹ in Hull.

- The wedding was conducted by the local Anglican vicar. She is a personal friend of the bride.

However, **since**²⁰ gender markers have been reduced to the pronouns she/her/hers/herself **vs.**²¹ he/him/his/ himself this is not always easy.

Moreover, if we **state**²² the sex of the person (e.g. 'male nurse', 'woman/female bus driver') this is in reference to sexist assumptions, not to the meaning of the word.

Non-gender-specific Options

At the same time English has an arsenal of words for specifically not defining the sex of the person in question:

- » child (son or daughter)
- » child (boy or girl)
- » parent (mother or father)
- » partner (boyfriend or girlfriend)
- » sibling (brother or sister)
- » spouse (husband or wife)

¹¹**baker** - sb. who makes bread

¹²**butcher** - sb. who sells meat

¹³**chemist** - a pharmacist, sb. who works with chemicals

¹⁴**colleague** - (semi-false friend) co-worker, fellow worker, sb. you work with

¹⁵**cousin** - son or daughter of your uncle/aunt

¹⁶**fishmonger** - sb. who sells fish
¹⁷**relative** (n.) - relation, member of your extended family

¹⁸**vicar** - Anglican parish leader

¹⁹**to train** - (in this case) be trained, receive training

²⁰**since** - (in this case) given that

²¹**vs.** - versus, in contrast to

²²**to state** - say, define

Feminine Forms

Most English words are neutral, so they can be used to refer to both sexes. However, some words are specifically male or female. This article looks at female affixes.

The -ess Suffix

The suffix -ess is added to many words to make them specifically female, such as:

heiress¹, **hostess**², lioness, **priestess**³, **shepherdess**⁴.

Often the -er/-or ending of neutral form loses its vowel in the process:

actor	actress
mister	mistress ⁵
sculptor	sculptress
tiger	tigress
waiter	waitress

If the base form ends in e, the e disappears when the suffix -ess is added:

ogre	ogress
prince	princess

In other cases, the whole er/or syllable is lost:

adulterer	adulteress
adventurer	adventress
governor	governess
murderer	murderess
sorcerer	sorceress ⁶

Occasionally, the change to the **root**⁷ is even more radical:

abbot ⁸	abbess
duke	duchess
emperor	empress

The suffix -ess is often used to make occupations feminine (e.g. actress, poetess, waitress and princess). However, women who work in restaurants and in the arts increasingly like to be called waiters, poets and actors, respectively (i.e. using the masculine term as



Sorceress

a non-gender-specific term). For some strange reason princesses don't seem to want to be called 'princes', but that's another story!

The Prefix Woman-

Non-specific terms for professions can be made specifically female by using woman- as a prefix: woman-dentist, woman-lawyer, woman-teacher, etc.

The Suffix -woman

Terms for professions ending man are unquestionably male. They can be made nonspecific by replacing man with person, and feminine by replacing man with woman: camerawoman, postwoman, saleswoman, spokeswoman, etc.

The Prefix She-

Some animal names are made feminine by adding the prefix she-:

she-**bear**⁹, she-**devil**¹⁰, she-elephant, she-**wolf**¹¹.

¹**heiress** - woman who will inherit sth.

²**hostess** - woman who welcomes and entertains guests

³**priestess** - woman who performs religious rituals

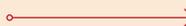
⁴**shepherdess** - woman who looks after sheep

⁵**mistress** - a. woman in a position of authority; b. female lover of a married man

⁶**sorceress** - witch, woman who practises black magic

⁷**root** - (in this case) base form

⁸**abbot** - director of a monastery

⁹**bear** - 

¹⁰**she-devil** - female demon

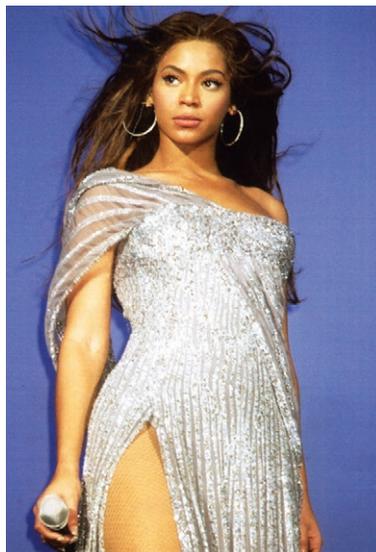
¹¹**wolf** - 



Girls' Names in the Anglosphere

Two hundred years ago **almost**¹ a quarter of all the women in Britain were called 'Mary'. Fortunately, such unimaginative times **are long gone**². There is now an immense variety of girls' names in the UK and **throughout**³ the Anglosphere. This is in part the result of multiculturalism but more because **parents**⁴ are more inventive with girls' names than with boys' names in English-speaking countries. Girls' names are more affected by changing fashions and there is a much greater **turnover**⁵ in female **monikers**⁶. Moreover, in Britain it is less common to **call**⁷ children **after**⁸ their parents (or **relatives**⁹), so names enter the pool more easily than in other countries.

In the USA there is not much difference between African-American boy's names and those of the rest of the population. However, 'black' girls' names tend to be radically different from 'white' girls' names. Having said that, as African-American celebrities with exotic names become famous, their names will be absorbed into the general population (in other words, expect a generation of babies called Beyoncé¹⁰ and Latoya!).



Beyoncé



Audrey Hepburn

In comparison to boys' names, female **monikers**⁶ **are more likely to**¹¹ have two or more syllables (as opposed to one), are less likely to stress the first syllable and tend to end in a vowel (boy's names tend to end in a consonant sound). For example, compare 'George' and 'Georgina'.

Sources¹²

Curiously, no English girls' names survive from before the Norman Conquest. The exception that proves the rule is 'Audrey', which is the Anglo-Norman corruption of *Æðelþryð* (Ethelthryth). The best-established 'English' girls' names come from Hebrew: Ann (= God has favoured me), Deborah (= **bee**¹³), Jessica (= **gift**¹⁴), Rachel (/ˈreɪtʃəl/ (= **ewe**¹⁵), Rebecca (= **binding**¹⁶), Sarah (= princess) and Sharon (= plain).

Many other girls' names are **truly**¹⁷ international and need no explanation (such as Amanda, Angela, Gemma, Jane, Julie/Julia, Sophie/Sophia and Victoria). We have therefore chosen to focus over the next few pages on Celtic names used in the Anglosphere. These are generally much more difficult to interpret and pronounce, so in one sense focusing on them will be most useful for **EFL**¹⁸ learners.

¹**almost** - nearly, just under, practically

²**are long gone** - disappeared a long time ago

³**throughout** - in every part of

⁴**parents** - (false friend) mothers and fathers

⁵**turnover** - rate at which sth.

changes

⁶**moniker** - name

⁷**to call** - (in this case) name

⁸**after** - in honour of

⁹**relative** - relation, member of one's extended family

¹⁰**Beyoncé Knowles's first name is a corruption of her mother's maiden name**

mother's maiden name (= surname before marriage)
'Beyoncé'

¹¹**are more likely to** - have a greater probability of + -ing

¹²**source** - origin, where sth. comes from

¹³**bee** -

¹⁴**gift** - present, sth. given

¹⁵**ewe** - female sheep

¹⁶**binding** /ˈbaɪndɪŋ/ - irrevocable

¹⁷**truly** - genuinely

¹⁸**EFL** - English as a foreign language



Celtic Versions of International Names

If you think English names are difficult...!

Names from the 'Celtic Fringe'¹ **fall into**² two types. First there are the autochthonous names which don't have an equivalent in English or in other European languages. On the other hand, there are many names that are simply Celtic versions of names that are frequent **elsewhere**³ - though you would often **have trouble**⁴ recognizing them. In this article we look at this **latter**⁵ group. In subsequent pages we will look at autochthonous Scottish, Welsh and Irish names.

Women's Names

- » **Catherine** (English from Greek⁶)
- » **Karen** (Danish)
- » **Caitlin** /'keitlin/ (Irish Gaelic)
- anglicized as Cathleen or Kathleen



Susan Sarandon

Photo by Killopedio

- » **Catriona** /kə'tri:nə/ (Scottish Gaelic)
- anglicized as Katrina
- » **Catrin** /'kætrin/ (Welsh)

- » **Elizabeth** (English from Hebrew⁷)
- » **Éilís** /'eilij/ (Irish Gaelic)
- anglicized as Eilish
- » **Easasaid** /'jaləsətj/ (Scottish Gaelic)

- » **Helen** (English from Ancient Greek⁸)
- » **Aibhlin/Eibhlín/Léan** (Irish Gaelic)
- anglicized as Eileen, Eilleen or Eilean
- commonly spelt 'Aileen' in Scotland
- » **Eilidh** /'eili:/ (Scottish Gaelic)

- » **Jane** (English from French⁹)
- » **Siobhán** /ʃi'vo:n/ (Irish Gaelic)
- anglicized as 'Shevon(ne)'
- » **Sian** /ʃa:n/ (Welsh)

- » **Janet** (English from French¹⁰)
- » **Sinéad** /ʃi'neid/ (Irish Gaelic)
- » **Seònaid** /'jo:natj/ (Scottish Gaelic)
- anglicized as Shona

- » **Jean** (Scottish form of 'Jane' or 'Joan')



Margaret French Cresson,
American sculptor 1889-1973

- » **Sine** /'ʃi:nə/ (Scottish Gaelic)
- anglicized as Sheena

- » **Joan(ne)** (English from French¹¹)
- » **Seònağ** /'ʃo:nak/ (Scottish Gaelic)

- » **Margaret** (English from Latin¹²)
- » **Máiread** /'mairat/ (Irish Gaelic)
- » **Mairead** /'mairat/ (Scottish Gaelic)
- » **Mared** /'ma:red/, **Megan** (Welsh)

- » **Marjorie/Margery** (originally a variant of 'Margaret')
- » **Marsali** (Scottish Gaelic)

- » **Mary** (English from Hebrew¹³)
- » **Máire** /'mæri/ (Irish Gaelic)
- anglicized as Maura and Moira
- » **Màiri/Mhàiri** (Scottish Gaelic)
- » **Mairwen** (Welsh)

- » **Susan** (English from Hebrew¹⁴)
- » **Siùsaidh** /'ju:si:/ (Scottish Gaelic)

¹the **Celtic Fringe** - the Highlands of north-west Scotland, Ireland, Wales and Cornwall

²to **fall into** (fall-fell-fallen) - **divide into**

³**elsewhere** - in other places

⁴to **have trouble** (have-had-had) - have difficulty, find it difficult to

⁵**latter** - second

⁶it probably means 'pure'

⁷it means 'God is perfection'

⁸it means 'bright', 'shining'

⁹**Jehane**. It was the female form of **Jean** (= 'John', from the Hebrew **Yohanan** = 'God is gracious')

¹⁰from the French diminutive (**Jeannette**) for John

¹¹from the Old French diminutive (**Johanne**) for John

¹²ultimately (= in the final analysis) from

the Ancient Greek word for 'pearl'

¹³the meaning of this most popular of female names is not clear. It is known to be a New Testament form of 'Miriam'. Suggested meanings include 'sea',

'bitterness' and 'rebelliousness'

¹⁴it means 'lily'

Names from Gaelic

Fewer and fewer people speak Irish or Scottish Gaelic on a daily basis. However, paradoxically names from Gaelic are more popular than ever both in Ireland and around the world.

Irish Girls' Names

» **Aisling** /'aʃlɪŋ/
(also Aislínn)

- this name means 'vision' or 'dream'.

» **Brid** or **Brigit**

(anglicized as 'Bridget')

- it comes from a word meaning 'strength'.

» **Ciara** (anglicized as 'Kiera')

- this name of a 7th-century saint means 'dark'

» **Clodagh** /'klɒdə/
- from the name of a river in Ireland

» **Colleen**

- from the word for 'girl'

» **Erin/Errin/Eryn**

- probably means 'western island'

» **Fionnghuala**

(anglicized as 'Fionnuala', 'Fenella', or 'Finella')

= 'fair-shouldered'

» **Íde** /'iːdʲə/ (anglicized as Ita /'aitə/)

- it was the name of a 6th-century saint

» **Máirín** (anglicized as 'Maureen')

= diminutive of 'Máire' (i.e. = 'little Mary')

» **Meadhbh** or **Medh** /meiv/

(anglicized as 'Maeve', 'Mave' or 'Mab')

= 'the **intoxicating** one'

» **Móirín**

(anglicized as 'Moreen')

= the diminutive of Mór (= great)



Fiona from *Shrek*

Photo by The Community - Pop Culture Geek from LA, California

» **Muadhnaít**

(anglicized as 'Mona')

= 'noble'. It was the name of a saint.

» **Muirgheal**

(anglicized as 'Muriel' or 'Meryl')

= 'bright sea'

» **Muirne**

(anglicized as 'Myrna')

= 'high-spirited'

» **Shelagh** (anglicized as 'Sheila')

= blind

» **Sorcha**

/'sɔːkʰə/

= 'bright', 'radiant'

Scottish Gaelic Girls' Names

» **Fiona** /'fiunə/

- possibly from Scottish Gaelic fionn (= 'fair³')

» **Mór, Morag**

= 'great'

'fair-shouldered - having beautiful shoulders (= where your arms connect to your torso)

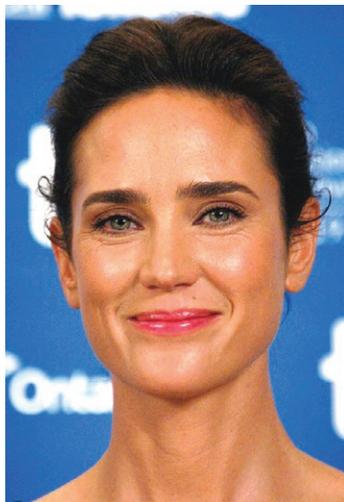
²intoxicating - (false friend) who makes you drunk

³fair - (in this case) blond(e) (= yellow-haired)



Meryl Streep

Photo by Andreas Tai



Jennifer Connelly

Photo by Karon Liu

African-American Poet Laureate
Gwendolyn Brooks

Photo by MDC Archives

*Glen or Glenda* (1953) written,
directed by, and starring Ed Wood.

Welsh Girls' Names

If it weren't for Welsh we wouldn't have
Enid Blyton or Gwyneth Paltrow!

Unambiguously Female Names

Most Welsh women are either pure [glen-] or beautiful [(g)wen- or -(g)wyn-]!

» **Annwyl** /'anwel/ = 'beloved'

» **Delwyn** = 'beautiful', '**neat**¹' or 'white'

» **Dilys** = 'sincere'

» **Eluned/Eiluned** /e'linid/ = 'idol'
anglicized as 'Lynette'

» **Enid** /'i:nid/ = '**soul**²' or 'life force'
(= *enaid*)

» **Gwladys**

- anglicized as 'Gladys'. The meaning is unclear, though it may be related to *gwledig* (= prince).

» **Glenda** = 'clean', 'pure' (= *glân*) + 'good' (= *da*)

» **Glenys** = 'pure', '**holy**³'
also 'Glenis' and 'Glynis'

» **Gwendolyn** = 'beautiful (= *gwen*)
ring/circle' (= *dolen*)
also 'Gwendoline', and 'Wendoline'

» **Gwyneth** /'gwinəθ/ = 'happiness'

» **Mairwen** = 'beautiful Mary'

» **Olwen** = 'white footprint'⁴
also 'Olwyn'

- the name comes from a legend in which white flowers grew wherever a princess walked.

Ambiguous Names

The following names can be **male**⁵ or female, though they are usually female these days:

» **Glyn(n)** = 'valley'

» **Maredudd** = 'great lord'
anglicized as 'Meredith'

The Cornish Contribution

The Normans took the Welsh name 'Gwenhwyfar' (= white and smooth) and turned it into 'Guinevere' /'gwinivɪə/ (as in the Arthurian Legends). For some reason these names didn't **catch on**⁶ but the Cornish version, '**Jenifer**', anglicized as 'Jennifer', did.

¹**neat** - ordered, tidy

²**soul** - eternal spirit

³**holy** - sacred, sanctified, sacrosanct

⁴**footprint** - the mark of a foot on the ground

⁵**male** - ♂

⁶**to catch on** (catch-caught-caught) - become popular

Gallis & Dolls

British and American English are constantly converging. However, there are half a dozen or so women-related terms that can still cause confusion.

» **beast**

In US English this is an aggressive insulting term for an unattractive young woman. However, in British English when 'beast' is applied to a person it means a (male) sex offender.

» **a boob** /bu:b/ **tube**

In UK English this rhyming term refers to a **garment**¹ for women **worn**² over the **chest**³. In US English the same garment is called a 'tube top'. However, in US English the 'boob tube' is a colloquial term for the television.

» **a broad**

This US slang term referring to any woman is not used in UK English. It is potentially offensive and **should be avoided**⁴.

» **a dame**

This is not simply a synonym for 'lady'. In Britain it is a title of nobility equivalent to 'sir' (e.g. Dame Judy Dench). In the US it is a **rather**⁵ disdainful word for a woman, especially a middle-aged woman.

» **a doll**

= young woman or one's girlfriend. The term is still considered an Americanism, though it is universally understood in Britain (thanks to the musical Guys and Dolls). The term is objectifying, condescending and proprietorial and so **should be avoided**⁴.



A boob tube

Photo by Ab Zahri Ab Azizis



Dame Judy Dench

Photo by Caroline Bonarde Ucci

» **a gallis**

An interesting black British term for a group of females. It seems to combine the slang term '**gal**'⁶ with the Scottish adjective 'gallis' (= **cheeky**⁷, **assertive**⁸).

» **a mom**

US spelling and pronunciation of 'mum'.

» **a tramp**

In British English this word means a vagabond (a 'bum' or a 'hobo' in US English). However, in US English 'a tramp' is a promiscuous woman or a prostitute (a 'scrubber' in UK English). This usage is more recent than the famous 1937 song 'The Lady is a Tramp'⁹, which simply meant that the woman in question was unconventional.

¹**garment** - piece of clothing

²**to wear** (wear-wore-worn) - (in this case) place, put

³**chest** - torso, (in this case),

boobs (= mammary glands)

⁴**it should be avoided** - it is better not to use it

⁵**rather** - somewhat, surprisingly

⁶**gal** - (US slang) girl

⁷**cheeky** - insolent

⁸**assertive** - dominant, feisty /'feisti/, self-assured

⁹**from the Rodgers and Hart musical 'Babes in Arms'**

Womanly Words

Woman

In terms of pronunciation, 'woman-women' is one of the most perverse words in the English language. The -o- in the singular is pronounced /u/. The only other ordinary English words in which this is the case are '**wolf**'¹ /wulf/ and the first -o- in '**bosom**'² /'buzəm/. However, the -o- in the plural is pronounced /i/. This is the only case in English in which -o- is pronounced in this way. A number of English expressions can help you to remember the pronunciation of the plural:

- » **women's lib**³ /wiminz 'lib/
- » **women** and **children first**⁴
- » **Little Women**⁵

The only expression that might help with the pronunciation of 'woman' is '**Worcester woman**'⁶ but the pronunciation of 'Worcester' is even more bizarre than 'woman', so it's not very useful!

The Origins of 'Woman'

Etymologically, 'woman' comes from *Wifman(n)*⁷ (= female⁸-person) in Anglo-Saxon. Presumably, the -f- was omitted early on to make the word easier to say ('wiman'). The vowel -i- was probably changed to -o- by Norman **scribes**⁹. They did this type of thing (creating 'son' from *sunne* and 'wonder' from *wundor*) **to avoid**¹⁰ a series of **looping**¹¹ letters that would be difficult to read: *wim(an)*, (*s*)*unn(e)*, *wun(dor)*.

However, the spelling of Norman scribes did not affect the pronunciation of the **illiterate**¹² majority who continued to say 'wiman' and 'wimen'. This, however, left a **further**¹³ problem: distinguishing between the singular and plural.¹⁴ At some point the pronunciation of 'woman' **shifted**¹⁵ to /'wumən/, perhaps under the influence of '**womb**'¹⁶, which surprisingly is etymologically unrelated.

Pronouncing 'Girl'

The pronunciation of 'girl' is consistent with the rules of English pronunciation but the /3:/ sound is not common in other languages and so needs some attention. Words spelt -ir- + consonant (e.g. bird, firm) are usually pronounced /3:/. However, this is also true of words spelt -ear- + consonant (earn, heard), -er- + consonant (term, nerd), -ur- + consonant (turn, murder). Moreover, wor- + consonant is usually pronounced /w3:/ (word, work). This leads to the following euphonic expressions:

- » a **working girl**¹⁷
- » **girls in pearls**¹⁸
- » **Jersey Girl**¹⁹



Woman

Photo by Marina Carresi

¹ **wolf** (plural 'wolves') -

² **bosom** - bust, chest, mammary glands

³ **women's lib** - women's liberation

⁴ **see p. 80**

⁵ **a novel (1869) by Louisa May Alcott that has been made into several movies**

⁶ **Worcester** /'wustə/ **woman** - the key British voter at the



beginning of the 21st Century
⁷ plural **Wifmenn**
⁸ **Wif** is the origin of 'wife'
⁹ **scribe** - (historical) copyist

¹⁰ **to avoid** - (in this case) so as not to have

¹¹ **looping** - that forms curves

¹² **illiterate** - not able to read or write

¹³ **further** - additional

¹⁴ **this is a common problem in English. We pronounce words like 'workman' and 'postman' the same in the singular and the plural.**

¹⁵ **to shift** - change

¹⁶ **womb** /wu:m/ - uterus

¹⁷ **working girl** - a. a young woman who goes out to work; b. prostitute

¹⁸ **girls in pearls** - high-society portraits (= paintings) of women

¹⁹ **a 2004 movie by Kevin Smith starring Liv Tyler and Ben Affleck**

Women and Children First

Sexist language infantilizes young women much later than young men; a young woman is 'a girl'¹ a long time after a young man has stopped being 'a boy'. The phrase 'Women and children first' may be seen to epitomize this view of women as 'other minors'. However, the '**chivalry**'² of the sea is much more recent than you might imagine. The first known case of 'women and children first' occurred when **HMS**³ *Birkenhead* **ran aground**⁴ **off**⁵ South Africa in 1852. However, it was only when the captain of *The Titanic* famously gave the order that the concept was universalized.⁶ **Indeed**⁷, there is some evidence that the British elite **spread**⁸ the myth of chivalry at sea as a counterargument to the demands for women's suffrage: "Look, there's no need for you to vote because men always put women's interests first!"

In fact, when Mikael Elinder of **Uppsala University** in Sweden studied the lists of survivors of **shipwrecks**⁹ over



The wreck of the HMS Birkenhead



Titanic lifeboat: female survivors from the Titanic shipwreck

the last three hundred years he found that the survival rate for men is double that of women (the survival rate of children was even lower). In fact, the (**male**¹⁰) **crew**¹¹ **were the most likely to**¹² survive (**nearly**¹³ double the rate of **male**¹⁰ passengers) and even captains had a better survival rate than the **average**¹⁴ passenger! However, things were much worse in the **age of chivalry**¹⁵. In 1379 an English **fleet**¹⁶ **sailing**¹⁷ to Brittany **ran into**¹⁸ a **storm**¹⁹. First they **jettisoned**²⁰ all the extra weight on board and, when that **didn't work**²¹, Sir John Arundel gave the order to throw the 60 women aboard into the sea!

English novelist Somerset Maugham said that he always chose to travel on French ships "because there's none of that **nonsense**²² about women and children first!"

¹or even a 'babe' or a 'baby'

²**chivalry** - the idealized social and moral code of gentlemen

³**HMS** - Her Majesty's Ship

⁴**to run aground** (run-ran-run) - become immobilized because there is **not enough water under the ship**

⁵**off** - (in this case) at sea **near to**

⁶**as a result, three times more women than men survived**

The Titanic /tai'tænik/
disaster

⁷**indeed** - (*emphatic*) in fact

⁸**to spread sth.** (spread-spread-spread) - disseminate

⁹**shipwreck** -

¹⁰**male** - ♂

¹¹**crew** - people who work together on a ship

¹²**were the most likely to** - had the greatest probability of (+ ing)

¹³**nearly** - almost, **just under**, practically

¹⁴**average** - typical

¹⁵**the age of chivalry** - the

Middle Ages, mediaeval times

¹⁶**fleet** - group of ships

¹⁷**to sail** - go by sea

¹⁸**to run into** (run-ran-run) - encounter

¹⁹**storm** - tempest (*poetic*)

²⁰**to jettison** - eject from a ship, throw overboard

²¹**not work** - fail, **not** be successful

²²**nonsense** - idiocy, stupidity





My better half

Photo by Sara L. Carresi

Women's Idioms

A review of the traditional expressions referring to women reveals that English is (or at least was) a **deeply**¹ misogynist language.

» **Frailty, thy² name is woman**
(*Hamlet* I.ii. 146)

The word 'frail' comes from the same Latin origin as 'fragile'. Specifically, in this expression 'frail' implies moral weakness. The phrase is only used **facetiously**³ these days.

» **Hell hath⁴ no fury like a woman scorned⁵**

= a woman who has been rejected by a man can be proverbially vindictive.

This well-known expression paraphrases "Heaven has no rage like **love to hatred turned**⁶, Nor hell a fury like a woman scorned" from William Congreve's 1697 tragedy, *The Mourning⁷ Bride* (III.8).

» **A woman's work is never done**
= there is always more housework to do. The expression comes from the **couplet**⁸:
"A man may work from sun-to-sun

But a woman's work is never done." The expression **assumes**⁹ that housework is exclusively a woman's responsibility.

» **wine, women and song**

= a carefree, hedonistic existence. Apparently women exist as entertainment for men.

» **to make an honest woman of sb.**
(make-made-made)

= marry sb. The idea is that a woman can regain her respectability - presumably lost during premarital sex - through marriage. The phrase is only used **facetiously**³ these days.

» **womanly wiles**¹⁰

= women's supposed ability to manipulate men covertly.

This alliterative expression is at least as old as *Sir Gawain and the Green Knight* (14th Century), which mentions *wyles of wymmen*.

» **old wives' tales**

= unscientific traditional beliefs

Wife Expressions

British English has a series of colloquial alternatives to 'wife'. All of them would tend to be used **facetiously**³ these days:

» **the trouble¹¹ and strife¹²** (*rhyming slang*)

» **the missus**

» **my better half**

» **the other half**

» **her indoors**¹³

Notice that the initial h- in the last three expressions tends to be silent, reflecting the working-class London pronunciation (e.g. 'er *indoors*, the other 'aaf).

¹**deeply** - profoundly, (in this case) very

²**thy** - (archaic) your (singular)

³**facetiously** - flippantly, in a joking way, in a jocular manner

⁴**hath** - (archaic) has

⁵**to scorn sb.** - treat sb. with disdain

⁶**love to hatred turned** - (poetic) love that

has become resentment/animosity

⁷**mourning** - lamenting the death of a loved one

⁸**couplet** /'kʌplɪt/ - two lines that rhyme

⁹**to assume** - (false friend) take for granted, accept without consideration

¹⁰**wiles** /waɪ'ɪlz/ - manipulative stratagems

¹¹**trouble** - problems

¹²**strife** - conflict. **The description of a woman as "(perpetual) trouble and (constant) strife" dates back to deeply misogynist 12th-century *Life of Secundus***

¹³**indoors** - inside the home

Gender & False Friends

False Femmes Around the World

Many women around the world will understand why the Thai word *men* means 'a bad smell'. Equally, there's a certain feminist logic in the fact that the Italian word *male* means 'wicked'.¹ **Conversely**², the Irish word for a man is *fean*. In fact, gender relations around the world seem to be **pretty**⁴ **dismal**⁵. The Afrikaans word for a 'significant other' is *sleep*, while the Vietnamese term for wife is *that*. Worse still, *kiss* in Swedish means 'piss', while the excruciating French word for a penis is *bite*! Mothers who like to get out and enjoy themselves away from their families have to approve of Albanian in which *dad* means 'babysitter'. There may also be lessons to be learned from Japanese by rich men who have 'trophy wives'⁶; in that language *bimbo*⁷ means 'poverty'.

Hebrew seems to have some gender confusion: *he* means 'she'! The same could be said of Hindi in which *mama* means 'uncle'. On the other hand, Yiddish⁸ seems to be quite clear about who takes the decisions; its word for **bridegroom**⁹ is *chosen*! Sometimes false friends are just cruelly perverse. **For instance**¹⁰,

son in Vietnamese means 'to be childless'.

Troublesome¹¹ Terms

The words given above are fascinating but they are not **false cognates**¹² for the Romance-language speakers we are primarily addressing. The following are:

» **douche**

This is not simply a shower but the washing of the female pudendum. A douchebag is a small **syringe**¹³ for washing out the vagina. The term is used as an insult for an **obnoxious**¹⁴ person in US English.

» **embarrassed**

= uncomfortably self-conscious
≠ pregnant

» **gender**

= male or female identity
≠ genre /'ʒɒnrə/

» **matron**

= senior **nurse**¹⁵
≠ **old maid**¹⁶

Finally, don't confuse **'heroin'**¹⁷ with **'heroine'**, or **'princes'**¹⁸ with **'princess'**.



Matron



Heroine: Joan of Arc

¹**wicked** - malevolent, evil

²**in English the homograph of the Italian term male, 'male' /meɪˈl/ means '♂'**

³**conversely** - on the other hand

⁴**pretty** (adv.) - quite, reasonably, rather

⁵**dismal** - depressing, lamentable, bad, deplorable

⁶**trophy wife** - young attractive wife considered as a status symbol for an older man

⁷**in English the colloquial term 'bimbo' means 'an attractive but stupid young**

woman' (typically blonde)

⁸**Yiddish the language of Central European Jews before the Holocaust**

⁹**bridegroom** - man who is getting married

¹⁰**for instance** - for example

¹¹**troublesome** - problematic

¹²**false cognates** - two (or more) etymologically related terms in different languages that have divergent meanings

¹³**syringe** /sɪˈrɪndʒl/ - (in this case) tube with a bulb on one end used for ejecting liquid to

clean a body cavity

¹⁴**obnoxious** - extremely unpleasant

¹⁵**nurse** - 

¹⁶**old maid** - (derogatory) single woman considered too old to marry

¹⁷**heroin** - an opioid narcotic drug

¹⁸**prince** (plural 'princes') - son of a monarch



Humour & Phrasal Verbs

Phrasal verbs are the **bane**¹ of most **EFL**² learners' lives and the idea that they could be the basis for humour probably sounds like a **sick joke**³. **Yet**⁴, quite a lot of English **quips**⁵ **hinge around**⁶ wordplay on phrasal verbs. This can take the form of verbal acrobatics. **For instance**⁷, Eleanor of Aquitaine (played by Katharine Hepburn) in the movie *The Lion in Winter* (1968) **blurts out**⁸, "**What would you have me do?**" **Give out**¹⁰? **Give up**¹¹? **Give in**¹²?" However, more frequently we **come across**¹³ simple **punning**¹⁴ jokes. Most are **pretty dreadful**¹⁵, though that does not stop them being used by **the great and the good**¹⁶. The influential Victorian art critic John Ruskin, for example, once made the **insightful**¹⁷ **remark**¹⁸, "When a man **is wrapped up in himself**¹⁹ he makes a pretty small package" - you wrap up a package when you cover it in (wrapping /'ræpiŋ/) paper.

Phrasal-Verb Quips⁵

Q: Did I tell you the joke about the high wall? **Actually**²⁰, I'd better not. You'd never **get over**²¹ it!

Q: Did you hear about the **criminal**²² contortionist?
A: He **turned himself in**²³.



Why are good intentions like people who faint?

Q: What do all managers have that they can always **count on**²⁴?

A: Their fingers.

Q: Why are **dentures**²⁵ like stars?

A: They **come out**²⁶ at night?

Q: Why are good intentions like people who **faint**²⁷?

A: Because they need to **be carried out**²⁸.

Q: Why couldn't the invisible man lie to his wife?

A: Because she could **see right through**²⁹ him?

Q: Why did the **belt**³⁰ go to prison?

A: Because it **held up**³¹ a pair of trousers.

Q: Why did you **put the kettle**³² on³³?

A: I didn't have anything else to wear.

¹**bane** - misfortune, torment

²**EFL** - English as a foreign language

³**sick joke** - morbid joke, humorous comment that is in bad taste

⁴**yet** - (in this case) however, nevertheless

⁵**quip** - joke, jape, humorous comment

⁶**to hinge around** - be centred on

⁷**for instance** - for example

⁸**to blurt out** - say abruptly

⁹**what would you have me do?** - (poetic) what do you expect me to do

¹⁰**to give out** (give-gave-given)

- stop functioning, faint²⁷

¹¹**to give up** (give-gave-given) - stop making an effort, stop trying

¹²**to give in** (give-gave-given) - surrender, capitulate

¹³**to come across** (come-came-come) - encounter

¹⁴**punning** - involving wordplay

¹⁵**pretty dreadful** - (in this case) not very funny

¹⁶**the great and the good** - VIPs, important people

¹⁷**insightful** - perspicacious

¹⁸**remark** - comment

¹⁹**to be wrapped up in oneself** - be narcissistic, be egotistical

²⁰**actually** - (false friend) in fact

²¹**to get over sth.** (get-got-got) - a. recuperate after experiencing sth.; b. climb over

²²**criminal** (adj.) - (false friend) delinquent

²³**to turn oneself in** - capitulate to the authorities

²⁴**to count on** - a. depend on; b. use to calculate sums

²⁵**dentures** - false teeth

²⁶**to come out** (come-came-come) - a. be taken out; b. appear

²⁷**to faint** - lose consciousness

²⁸**to carry out** - a. take sb. outside; b. execute/ perform sth.

²⁹**to see right through sb.**

(see-saw-seen) - a. know when sb. is lying; b. see what is on the other side of sth. because it is transparent

³⁰**belt** - 

³¹**to hold up** (hold-held-held) - a. stop sth. from falling down; b. rob

³²**kettle** - 

³³**to put sth. on** (put-put-put) - a. dress in, wear; b. activate

THE YES COMMUNITY

THE BOOKSHOPS

You can buy Yes at the following specialist bookstores:



Booksellers

C/ Fernández de la Hoz 40
28010 Madrid
914 42 81 04
administracion@booksellers.es
www.booksellers.es

Central Librería

C/ Dolores 2
15402 Ferrol - A Coruña
981 352 719 / 638 59 39 80
centrallibreria@telefonica.net
www.centrallibreria.com

Come In (Barcelona)

C/ Balmes 129 bis
08008 Barcelona
934 53 12 04
comein@libreriainglesa.com
www.libreriainglesa.com

Come In (Palma)

C/ Sant Miquel 58
07002 Palma de Mallorca
971 71 16 93
palma@libreriainglesa.com
www.libreriainglesa.com

If you would like a specialist bookshop in your area to stock Yes, tell us and we'll get in touch with them.

Doña Revis

C/ Gernikako Arbola, N 2 local
48902 Barakaldo - Vizcaya
944 37 81 63 / 664 629 770
donarevis1@gmail.com
www.eurobookonline.com

Eurobook

C/Fray Luis de León 23
47002 Valladolid
983 399 899
pedidos@eurobookonline.com

In Use Academy & Books

C/ Carles Riba 4
43007 Tarragona
977 29 09 31
english@inusetgn.com
www.inusetgn.com

Librería Donosti

Plaza de Bilbao 2
20005 San Sebastián
943 42 21 38 - Idonosti@telefonica.net



Herso Bookshop

C/ Dionisio Guardiola 18
02002 Albacete
967 50 71 57
herso@herso.com
www.herso.com

Librería Hojablanca

C/ Martín Gomero 6
45001 Toledo
925 25 44 06
info@libreriahojablanca.es
www.libreriahojablanca.es

Librería Pléyades

Avda.de España, 17 C.
Comercial Cánovas local 12
10002 Cáceres
927 22 80 23
libros@libreriapleyades.com
www.libreriapleyades.com

Librería Victor Jara

Calle Meléndez 21
37002 Salamanca
923 261 228 - amaru@verial.es
www.libreriavictorjara.com



Pasajes Libros

C/ Génova 3
28004 Madrid
91 310 12 45 - 1
ingles@pasajeslibros.com
www.pasajeslibros.com



Planet Book Librería de Idiomas

C/ Doce de Octubre 15
14001 Córdoba
957 49 24 86
libreria@planetbook.es
www.planetbook.es

THE LEARNING CENTRES

Are you looking for a language school that uses stimulating up-to-date material in class that results in effective conversation classes and tangible progress in your English?



BackUp Lines

Barcelona, Spain
935 47 88 53
www.backuplines.com



Murcia, Spain - 968 29 13 09
dep-ingles@eoimurcia.org



SCHOOLS OF LANGUAGES

Madrid, Spain - 91 564 0022
www.open.es / castellana@open.es



Mundolinguas

Pontevedra, Spain
986 10 41 42
www.mundolinguas.com

PRIVATE CLASSES

Are you looking for private classes that use stimulating up-to-date material in class? The following private teachers use Yes in their classes:



Almudena Rodríguez de Avendaño

Logroño (La Rioja)
941 286 826 (Centro Ibercaja La Rioja)
Email:
arodriguezav@obrasocial.ibercaja.es

Xavier Lafarga

Ateneu Popular de Ponent - Lleida, Catalunya
English classes for adults
Email: x.lafarga@gmail.com

Language Academies: Remember, if you subscribe to Yes, we'd be happy to include your logo and your details on this page. Just send them to us when you take out your institutional subscription (print or digital).



THE YES TEAM

We believe this should be an interactive process and as such we welcome all feedback (good or bad!).

- *Is there a subject you would like us to cover?*
- *Is there something you could be doing better?*
- *Do you simply have a question about English?*

You can contact us at:

nick@yes-mag.com and nathan@yes-mag.com

And remember we regularly post follow-up information on our Facebook page (@yeszine) and on the blog on the webpage. Finally, if you want to receive an exercise every week, our monthly newsletter and our methodology pack - all absolutely **FREE**, please subscribe to our newsletter on the webpage (www.yes-mag.com).





Picture Description: Youth & Fashion



Photo by Patrick Hsu

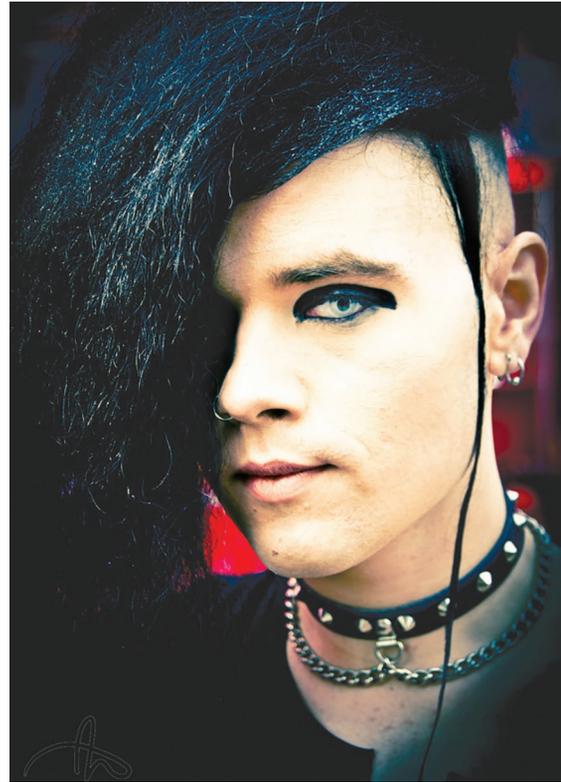


Photo by Adrian Wagner

1. Describe what you can see in the first photograph.

- » what is she wearing?
- » describe her posture.
- » what is the **overall**¹ effect of her look?

2. Describe what you can see in the second photograph.

- » what is the person wearing?
- » describe the person's posture.
- » what is the **overall**¹ effect of the person's look?

3. Do you think people adopt a specific look to express themselves or maybe to **mask**² their true personality or to **hide**³ themselves?

4. It is very common for young women to dress up as girls in Japan - do you consider this **kinky**⁴/dangerous? **Bear in mind**⁵ that Japan has one of the lowest **rates**⁶ of sexual violence in the world.

5. We usually associate a punk or gothic look with aggressiveness. However, the person in the second picture is highly androgynous and arguably has **rather**⁷ a sweet face. Do you consider this person's look contradictory? Which of the two people do you find more attractive? Who looks more innocent? Would either of these **fashion statements**⁸ be **out of place**⁹ in your country? If so, which? In Britain, Goths are regularly the victims of violence - why do you think that is?

¹**overall** - general

²**to mask** - hide, camouflage, conceal

³**to hide** (hide-hid-hidden) - camouflage, conceal

⁴**kinky** - sexually deprived, perverse

⁵**to bear in mind** (bear-bore-borne) - take into consideration

⁶**rate** - level

⁷**rather** - somewhat, surprisingly

⁸**fashion statement** - look

⁹**out of place** - inappropriate, unsuitable

AUDIO SCRIPTS

The following pages contain the transcriptions of what is spoken on the audio files.

SPOKEN-ENGLISH TIPS

Spoken English is significantly different from the written language: A more **limited vocabulary** is generally used and it is, by definition, **more colloquial**.

Moreover¹, spoken English uses many more **incomplete** or **badly constructed sentences**.

On the other hand, **intonation** and **stress** can be used in speech.

HOW TO USE THE AUDIO SCRIPTS

Follow our eight-step process to get the most out of the audio scripts:

1 **Before** you listen we recommend that you **read through** the relevant section of the **footnotes**² (not the text itself). This should give you some idea of the **subject**³ and help you to understand the more difficult vocabulary as you listen.

2 When you **listen the first time**, don't expect to understand everything; listening practice should not be a **painful**⁴ process. Simply see **how much meaning you can extract from the recording**.

3 **Listen more times** going back to the **footnotes** to integrate the information you have.

4 Once you understand reasonably well, **do the relevant exercise**.

5 **Finally, read** the audio scripts **as you listen** again.

6 **Stop** each time **you get lost** or encounter a structure that interests or confuses you.

7 **Repeat words** or **phrases** whose pronunciation surprises you.

8 Two or three **days later, listen** to the text **again** without reading to see if your understanding has **improved**⁵.

This process is intense and time-consuming. However, it will **eventually**⁶ solve the problem most learners have of **relating**⁷ the spoken word to the written. Once you've done that, the rest is easy!



YES NO. 18 TRACK LIST

Mini-debates (28m06s)

1. Happy Commuters (6m21s)
2. Enough Space to Live (13m45s)
3. Recliner Wars (8m00s)

4. Pronunciation (2m46s)

Monologues: The Future (14m36s)

5. Monologue 1 [US English] (4m05s)
6. Monologue 2 [British English] (2m11s)
7. Monologue 3 [US English] (4m28s)
8. Monologue 4 [British English] (3m52s)

9. Improvisation:

The Soccer Fan (4m03s)

10. Picture Description (3m43s)

Total time: 50m28s

¹**moreover** - what's more, further, more

²**footnotes** - notes at the bottom of the page (in this box)

³**subject** (n.) - (in this context) theme

⁴**painful** - (in this context) arduous, unpleasant

⁵**to improve** - get better

⁶**eventually** - (false friend) in the end

⁷**to relate** - associate, connect, link

Mini-debates

(28m06s)

1. Happy Commuters

(6m21s)

American man (AM1): I heard there was a study **out of**¹ the University of East Anglia that's found that the people who take the train or bus or subway, I imagine, are happier than those who drive.

Englishman (EM): I don't know if there are any subways in East Anglia. So, it's basically at the same level as the sea, so if you had an underground... if you had an underground...

AM1: Still, I wanted to **throw** that **in**² there anyway.

Englishwoman (EW): 'The Chunnel'³!

AM1: I'm very pro-public transport.

American man (AM2): Well, he **did say**⁴ the study was from the University of East Anglia. It doesn't mean it was done in East Anglia.

EM: It's an easy place to have public transport because it's absolutely flat. It's as flat as a billiard table. Probably they were studying it somewhere else.

AM1: Sounds boring to me - flat, you

know.

EM: Well, it's quite nice. It's quite sunny.

AM1: Oh, really?

EM: It's a relatively nice part of the world. Anyway...

AM2: I think I'd agree with that. I haven't driven a car in quite some time **within**⁵ the city, but when I did, I had to drive every day an hour **back and forth**⁶, 45 minutes to an hour back and forth into the city to work. And, yeah, it was quite easy to **get road rage**⁷ and **just**⁸ be tired, **tired of**⁹ driving. So I can see taking the train, having somebody else drive me...

AM1: Like you...

AM2: ...give me time to read or not think of anything or...

AM1: Exactly.

EM: But I think it depends very much on how well things are functioning.

EW: Yeah.

EM: If the roads are clear and there are no **traffic jams**¹⁰ and that type of thing probably, I don't know because

I don't drive, but probably driving's quite fun etc. and if you're... **I mean**¹¹, I've travelled on some of the community trains in and out of London where - **y'know**¹² - you are... you know that you're standing all the way there all the way back and you're not having this - **sort of**¹³ - relaxed conversation with friends and reading books. You're **just**⁸ in there like a sardine and there's nothing relaxing and nothing happy-making about that and if you're **gonna**¹⁴ **be stuck**¹⁵ in a place



Photo by Mario Herrera

¹**out of** - from

²**to throw sth. in** (throw-threw-thrown) - (in this case) include, mention

³**the Chunnel** - the Channel Tunnel, the train tunnel between England and France

⁴**did say** - (emphatic) said

⁵**within** - inside, in

⁶**back and forth** - this way and that, there

and back

⁷**to get road rage** (get-got-got) - (of drivers) act aggressively towards other drivers

⁸**just** - (in this case) simply

⁹**to be tired of** - be sick of, be frustrated with

¹⁰**traffic jams** - traffic congestion

¹¹**I mean** - (pause filler) like, y'know, sort of, kind of

¹²**y'know** - (pause filler) I mean, like, kind of, sort of

¹³**sort of** - (pause filler) kind of, y'know, like, I mean

¹⁴**gonna** - (slang) going to

¹⁵**to be stuck** - be trapped, be confined, be imprisoned



Photo by Tom Page

for hours you'd much **rather be**¹⁶ be in your car sitting down listening to your music so...

EW: Totally. And that's if the train comes. **I mean**¹¹, I don't know what East Anglia trains are like but most of the **commuter trains**¹⁷ to London, especially at **rush hour**¹⁸, **there's**¹⁹ **leaves**²⁰ on the **track**^{21, 22} you know you're not guaranteed that you'll get to work, you know.

AM1: Well - **y'know**¹² - I have also been living in the city... I've been living in a city now for a long time and I used to drive a lot coming

from the States. But, man, my life is so much more relaxed now that I don't have to worry about **car insurance**²³, I don't have to worry about car payments, I don't have to worry about car **upkeep**²⁴, I don't have to worry about paying for the **gas**²⁵, I don't have to worry about the stress of **riding**²⁶ **back and forth**⁶. And I find that I can use my time quite well on the metro. I get through... my only **chance**²⁷, because - **y'know**¹² - I'm very busy working, my only chance of reading is on the metro and, **since**²⁸ I travel a lot on the metro, I can read a

book.

EM: Americans don't read on the **loo**²⁹?

AM1: On the loo? Yeah, but what you... yeah, the loo, what are you going to read on the loo? You get a magazine.

EW: You can have your books. Put your books in the toilet.

AM1: I mean¹¹, I'm not going to read a book on the loo, you know.

EM: Why not?!

AM1: We call it 'the john', not 'the loo', but anyway. But I really find that my life is a lot better off now that I'm

¹⁶ **d rather be** - would prefer to be

¹⁷ **commuter train** - train that takes people into a city to work

¹⁸ **rush hour** - time of day when the traffic congestion is worst

¹⁹ **there's** - (informal) there are

²⁰ **leaves** - foliage

²¹ **track** - railway line

²² **'leaves on the line/track'** is a safety problem that is often regarded as an excuse for late trains

²³ **car insurance** - a policy (= agreement) purchased by car owners to mitigate



costs associated with future car accidents

²⁴ **upkeep** - maintenance

²⁵ **gas** (US English) - petrol (UK English)

²⁶ **riding** - (in this case) driving

²⁷ **chance** - opportunity

²⁸ **since** - (in this case) given that, as

²⁹ **loo** - toilet, WC





Photo by Marina Carresi

using **mass transit**³⁰. And sometimes you have to **put up with**³¹ - **y'know**¹² - a little **crowd**³², **crowded**³³ on the... you know...

AM2: Especially in the morning.

AM1: ...in the morning.

EM: Sorry, what does 'mass transit' mean? Is that public transport?

AM1: Mass transit, public transport - you know.

EW: Transport for the masses.

EM: I'm not familiar with the term, sorry.

EW: No, me neither, **actually**³⁴. No, I've never heard that.

AM1: Come on! Logically you **just**⁸ listen to that and you know. You're **just**⁸ being English, that's all.

EM: No, I'm not.

EW: Stop being so English! I like 'mass transit'.

AM1: I think it's... also I feel positive because I'm not polluting as much

as somebody driving a car. And one person driving a car I think is very **selfish**³⁵. I'm sorry, you know.

EM: Sanctimonious!

EW: **Y'know**¹² - in some parts, I don't know in East Anglia, but they have **lanes**³⁶ in the **motorway**³⁷ - but if you're one person in a car you can't **go**³⁸. You have to be two or three.

AM1: Right. Yeah, it has to be. Yeah, they do that in the States, too.

EM: High-occupancy?

EW: Oh really? Yeah, high-occupancy lanes.

EM: But would you... **I mean**¹¹, obviously OK you're all - **sort of**¹³ - '**green goddesses**³⁹ or whatever...

AM1: I'll be god, not goddess. Excuse me.

EM: Would you take that to the point of - **sort of**¹³ - penalizing and making life difficult for drivers like, for example, in Central London with the tax on

people driving?

EW: Oh, the congestion charge, totally.

AM1: But look at the **amount**⁴⁰ of pollution that people are **breathing in**⁴¹ you know. I see nothing wrong of taxing cars coming into the city. I think the less we use cars the better off for everybody. I mean the world, the better off for the world.

EW: But talking about **breathing in**⁴¹ **as well**⁴², that's one thing that really if I have to get up early, which thankfully I don't, to use the metro - but I find it horrendous in the morning **breathing in**⁴¹ everyone's germs, people are **coughing**⁴³ in your face. It's **actually**³⁴ quite a... what do you call it? ...a health risk travelling. **I mean**¹¹, in Japan everyone wears those masks, don't they? And now with the Ebola.

AM1: Well - **y'know**¹² - I learned...

³⁰ **mass transit** (US English) - public transport

³¹ **to put up with** (put-put-put) - stand, bear, tolerate

³² **crowd** - big group of people

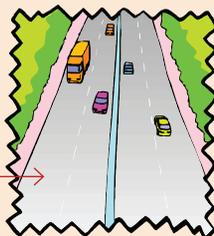
³³ **crowded** - full of people

³⁴ **actually** - (false friend) in fact

³⁵ **selfish** - self-centred, egotistical

³⁶ **lane** -

³⁷ **motorway** (UK English) - freeway, superhighway (US English)



³⁸ **to go** (go-went-gone) - (in this case) use them

³⁹ **green goddess** - (in this case) eco-warrior, environmentally conscious individual. **A 'goddess' is literally a female deity**

⁴⁰ **amount** - quantity, level

⁴¹ **to breathe in** - inhale

⁴² **as well** - too, also, (in this case) what's more

⁴³ **to cough** - eject air noisily from one's mouth

EM: But they're not neurotic!

EW: Atchoo! Ahh! Everyone's down on the floor.

AM1: Well, you wash your hands frequently when you - **y'know**¹² - you're travelling on... **'cos**⁴⁴ you're touching... I know, you do, you're touching something that - **y'know**¹² - hundreds or thousands of people have touched and, of course, you know there's a way of transmitting - **y'know**¹² - illness. But - **y'know**¹² - you get off the metro, you wash your hands or you get the spray, yeah.

EW: Oh, that spray. Yeah, the alcoholic thing.

AM1: But and I **take the flu shot**⁴⁵, so I'm not worried about getting the flu. So I'm perfectly happy with being on the metro.

EM: I'm all right, Jack!⁴⁶ OK.

AM1: On the subway or the underground or whatever you **wanna**⁴⁷ call it.

AM2: You could argue that people get more exercise if you take the public transport.

AM1: Oh yeah.

EM: That was one of the conclusions of these people, apparently.

EW: Because you're standing up for half an hour.

AM2: You're walking.

AM1: Well, you're walking to your place. Plus I get to read a book a week that I wouldn't normally get if - **y'know**¹² - because I travel so much.

EW: Wow, how long are you on the train for?

AM1: I travel a lot on the train. I'm going **back and forth**⁶ to here to there. **Y'know**¹² - it's part of my job.

EM: When he says a book, there are pictures.

AM1: Yeah, right! **There's**¹⁹ **actually**³⁴ words, you know. I stopped looking at picture books years ago.

EM: A comic book. A comic a week.

AM1: Yeah, a comic book. No, it's not a comic book. Yeah.



Photo by Gabriel Synnaeve



Photo by Chris McKenna (Thryduulf)

⁴⁴'cos - (slang) because

⁴⁵to take the flu shot (take-took-taken) - be

vaccinated against the influenza virus

⁴⁶I'm all right, Jack - (UK English) I don't care

because that problem doesn't affect me

⁴⁷wanna - (slang) want to



2. Enough Space to Live

(13m45s)



Photo by Marina Carresi

Englishman (EM): I was reading the other day that the standard **semi-detached home**⁴⁸ in Britain - what is - **sort of**¹³ - considered normal housing, whatever that means - is now around 44% smaller than it was 90 years ago. So, **whereas**⁴⁹ in 1924 a typical family was living in 153m², this year they're living in 86m². And people have been suggesting that this is **too small a space**⁵⁰ for a family to live in **healthily**⁵¹, especially in terms of mental health. And there are even - **sort of**¹³, **y'know**¹² - scare stories in the media about people have begun to **store**⁵² - **sort of**¹³ - non-perishable food in their cars and apparently a third of parents have **given up**⁵³ the - **sort of**¹³ - master bedroom, the parents' double bedroom so the children have a space to play and the parents **are stuck**⁵⁴ in a little room at the back of the house or whatever.

American man (AM): Isn't that - **sort of**¹³ - logical. **I mean**¹¹, if the population increases and we continue to build new houses. **I mean**¹¹, there's logically less space. So, in order to get **more bang for their buck**⁵⁵ they'll probably make housing smaller and...

South-African Woman (SW): This is a statistical argument. So, statistically how many people are living in this house?

EM: **Fair enough**⁵⁶, yeah. Certainly a family would be...

SW: 90 years ago how many children did the family constitute as opposed to today? It's **just**⁸ an interesting question.

EM: More, I think.

AM: I would imagine more, yeah.

EM: But probably not a massive, massive difference because the nature of the British population hasn't collapsed in the way that in some other countries. But certainly it would've been more.

⁴⁸**semi-detached home** - house that is joined to another house on one side

⁴⁹**whereas** - while

⁵⁰**too small a space** - insufficient space

⁵¹**healthily** - in a salubrious way

⁵²**to store** - keep

⁵³**to give up** (give-gave-given) - renounce

⁵⁴**to be stuck** - be confined

⁵⁵**more bang for their buck** - more value for money

⁵⁶**fair enough** - OK, that's true

Northern Irishman (NI): Well, I think, again, there's **actually**³⁴... there's a lot more to this question **as well**⁵⁷. There's **actually**³⁴ a geographical element to this **as well**⁵⁷. Most construction in Britain is performed in the Southeast. The Southeast is the metropolis, is this massive expanse which is London and its surrounding area which **makes up**⁵⁸ **nowadays**⁵⁹ the **largest**⁶⁰ single part of the British economy and it's... When I was a **kid**⁶¹ they used to say that 50% of the population of Britain lived south of the Watford Gap which is - **y'know**¹² - not very far north of London. I think **nowadays**⁵⁹ it's a lot more than that and I think you'll find there's not **an awful lot of**⁶² construction **going on**⁶³ in the Northeast of England or - **y'know**¹² - or in Scotland. This is becoming a real problem and it **has to do with**⁶⁴ the way we grow cities.

AM: It's a question of demographics in the end.

NI: Well, it's demographics but I think the question again, it's an economic one. You have certain big cities become the best places to **launch**⁶⁵ businesses because they've got bigger markets, because they're better communicated, because they're - **y'know**¹² - they've **just**⁸ got more, everything you need is local. So, **therefore**⁶⁶, every new business gets built there and - **y'know**¹² - so you get a place like London in the UK which is this big...

AM: **Magnet**⁶⁷ for...

NI: ...magnet for business. **Actually**³⁴, in the recent Scottish referendum a Scot told me that I think in 1980 there were 15, I think, of the top 100 companies in Britain were Scottish and now there are only three. That doesn't mean the Scots have **got bad at**⁶⁸ doing business. It **just**⁸ means that the businesses decided to **locate**⁶⁹ in the South. And this of course has the effect on population. People - **y'know**¹² - are trying to **cram into**⁷⁰ a smaller area and all those businesses need space for their employees and they're building low-cost houses.

EM: I think there's quite a lot of government **fault**⁷¹, ...at being at fault there in the sense that **huge amounts of**⁷² the administration of Great Britain also **happen**⁷³ in London and they could happen much more cheaply for all of us if all of that was dispersed and - **y'know**¹² - you had the - **sort of**¹³, **y'know**¹² - **the Inland Revenue**⁷⁴ in Birmingham or some village.

NI: I think that's been happening to **some extent**⁷⁵. I think the BBC, for example, a **large**⁷⁶ **chunk**⁷⁷ of it has **just**⁷⁸ moved to Salford much to the... I think there was a lot of **complaining**⁷⁹ from BBC executives who didn't want to move from their nice houses in London to Salford.

EM: But there's a **huge**⁸⁰ **saving**⁸¹ for the taxpayer in doing that...

NI: Absolutely.

EM: ...- **y'know**¹² - systematically

and it also **actually**³⁴ helps the argument that - **y'know**¹² - if you don't want this country to **break up**⁸² then **share out**⁸³ those jobs, all those administrative jobs equally across the country.

NI: That's right.

EM: So, that for me **is a no-brainer**⁸⁴. But, **I mean**¹¹, getting back to - **sort of**¹³ - the original question, is there some category, is there some definition of what is an acceptable living space or does it depend on the culture, does it depend on who we're talking about?

NI: Well, I think it definitely depends on the culture. I know that houses in Japan I think are **an awful lot**⁸⁵ smaller than what you get **pretty much**⁸⁶ anywhere else.

EM: Well, presumably Tokyo specifically or are we talking...

NI: Yes, I believe Tokyo, yeah. But again I understand in Japan there aren't **huge**⁸⁰ habitable spaces anywhere.

EM: Well, they've just lost quite a lot of it recently, the habitable part. Yes, but so is it **just**⁸ what you're **used to**⁸⁷?

NI: I think some of those...

SW: I think it's also an economic thing. I think people who **come from lower income brackets**⁸⁸ are accustomed to living in more **cramped**⁸⁹ conditions than **the wealthy**⁹⁰.

EM: But, **I mean**¹¹, **'cos**⁴⁴ another thing that I was thinking through with this, which doesn't **bear out**⁹¹

⁵⁷ **as well** - too

⁵⁸ **to make up** (make-made-made) - constitute

⁵⁹ **nowadays** - these days

⁶⁰ **largest** - biggest

⁶¹ **kid** - child

⁶² **an awful lot of** - (*emphatic*) a lot of, much

⁶³ **to be going on** - be happening, be occurring

⁶⁴ **to have to do with** (have-had-had) - be related to

⁶⁵ **to launch** - start

⁶⁶ **therefore** - for that reason

⁶⁷ **magnet** - (*literally*)



⁶⁸ **to get bad at** (get-got-got) - become inefficient when

⁶⁹ **to locate** - establish, set up

⁷⁰ **to cram into** - force oneself into, fit into

⁷¹ **fault** - (*in this case*) responsibility

⁷² **huge amounts of** - (*emphatic*) a lot of

⁷³ **to happen** - occur, take place

⁷⁴ **the Inland Revenue** - the institution that collected taxes in Britain (until 2005). **Now called Revenue and Customs**

⁷⁵ **to some extent** - to some degree, in part

⁷⁶ **large** - (*false friend*) big

⁷⁷ **chunk** - part

⁷⁸ **just** - recently

⁷⁹ **complaining** - protests, objections

⁸⁰ **huge** - enormous

⁸¹ **saving** - reduction in costs

⁸² **to break up** (break-broke-broken) - disintegrate

⁸³ **to share out** - divide up

⁸⁴ **to be a no-brainer** - be obvious

⁸⁵ **an awful lot** - (*emphatic*) much

⁸⁶ **pretty much** - more or less

⁸⁷ **to be used to** - be accustomed to

⁸⁸ **to come from lower income brackets** (come-came-come) - be poor

⁸⁹ **cramped** - restricted, confined

⁹⁰ **the wealthy** - the rich, prosperous people

⁹¹ **to bear out** (bear-bore-borne) - (*in this case*) resist



Semi-detached houses

Photo by Raymond Norris

the comparison with Japan, now that we're on the **subject**⁹², but was - **I mean**¹¹ - what I've experienced **above all**⁹³ is Northern Europe and Southern Europe or Britain and Southern Europe and seeing probably smaller homes in Southern Europe. But you can spend **an awful lot**⁶² more time in the street doing public things in Southern Europe than you can in Britain where it's - **sort of**¹³ - raining a lot of the time. And so children spend much more of their time **actually**³⁴ indoors at home I think in Britain.

NI: Right.

EM: Is it necessary... **I mean**¹¹, **does it matter**⁹⁴ that a child has their own room? Does it matter that a teenager has their own room?

AM: Yeah, I think so. I think that's important. To **develop**⁹⁵ as an individual I think you need at least your own room.

SW: That's a serious **indictment on**⁹⁶ me.

AM: You didn't have your own room?

SW: I didn't have my own room.

EM: That explains a lot!

AM: I **shared**⁹⁷ with my brother **as well**⁵⁷.

AM: But there were spaces... there were spaces and there were times in the house that I could be alone, that we could all be alone. But I know of families that didn't have that luxury, if you can call it that.

EM: But that need **comes about**⁹⁸ where **there's**¹⁹ more than one generation living in the house? Do small children need their own room?

NI: I think small children tend to **share**⁹⁷, at least mine do anyway.

AM: Yeah, I shared with my brother

⁹²**subject** - question, theme, topic

⁹³**above all** - primarily

⁹⁴**does it matter** - is it important

⁹⁵**to develop** - mature

⁹⁶**indictment on** - accusation against

⁹⁷**to share** - (in this case) cohabit

⁹⁸**to come about** (come-came-come) - occur, arise

up to a point. Yeah, we had **bunk beds**⁹⁹ in the room. But when we were teenagers, once we were teenagers we **no longer shared**¹⁰⁰.

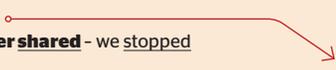
EM: At what age would you be wanting your **kids**⁶¹ to have their own rooms?

NI: Now! They're - **sort of**¹³... because they're going to kill each other. They are nine and seven. And, yeah, I think - **y'know**¹² - other children might be able to **put up with**¹⁰¹ it longer but our two **are at each other's throats**¹⁰² all day. So I'd **rather**¹⁰³ have that sooner **rather than**¹⁰⁴ later. And fortunately we have the space to do it. It means me moving where I work in the house to somewhere else, but we can do it. And - **y'know**¹² - and I think in the city where I live my apartment is unusually **large**¹⁰⁵. I think most people are not so fortunate to have so much space. But I think it's one of these things that **has to do with**⁶⁴... long term I think it has to do with I think there are health **issues**¹⁰⁶ in there. I think one of the things I noticed now about living in a city that is primarily apartment based **rather than**¹⁰⁴ - **y'know**¹² - a **'four-walled on the ground' house**¹⁰⁷. So - **like**¹⁰⁸ - where I grew up, there were no apartments in Belfast when I was growing up. But one thing I notice is the **lack of**¹⁰⁹ privacy, the noise that you **share**¹¹⁰ with your neighbours and I've never had the... I've never lived in one of the more modern constructions in the city where I live, but the more modern constructions I know have got **dreadful**¹¹¹ acoustic problem where - **y'know**¹² - you can basically hear your neighbours doing everything



Crofters' cottages

Photo by James Allan

⁹⁹**bunk beds** -  - we stopped cohabiting

¹⁰⁰**we no longer shared** - (put-put-put) - stand, tolerate

¹⁰¹**to put up with** (put-put-put) - stand, tolerate

¹⁰²**to be at each other's throat(s)** - be trying to kill one another

¹⁰³**'d rather** - would prefer to

¹⁰⁴**rather than** - as opposed to, instead of



¹⁰⁵**large** - (false friend) big, (in this case) spacious

¹⁰⁶**issue** - (in this case) question

¹⁰⁷**a 'four walls on the ground' house** - a house (as opposed to 'an apartment')

¹⁰⁸**like** - (pause filler) y'know, I mean, sort of, kind of

¹⁰⁹**lack of** - absence of, deficient

¹¹⁰**to share** - jointly experience

¹¹¹**dreadful** - awful, terrible

they do **on a daily basis**¹¹², some things that you'd **rather**¹⁰³ not hear. I think long term that can have an effect on your health. It's one of those things that can... **just**⁸ this idea of never having silence's **gotta be**¹¹³ problematic and that's what happens when you live in close proximity too many other people.

EM: But...

SW: But... Sorry. But is that **size**¹¹⁴ or construction quality?

NI: I think... well, I think it's both. Obviously you could... if everything were built perfectly. But, **I mean**¹¹, part of the **deal**¹¹⁵ here over the last - **y'know**¹² - over the last number of years has been - **y'know**¹² - size is reduced. The **aim**¹¹⁶ here is everyone's talking about creating low-cost housing and so the quality is being decreased **as well**⁵⁷. They're not building solid **brick walls**¹¹⁷ with double insulation or anything like that.

EM: But most of the human population during most of human history have been one family **sharing**¹¹⁸ a room all living together, have they not? I think... so, **I mean**¹¹, it's very easy to - **sort of**¹³ - think in terms of the **tiny**¹¹⁹ middle class who tend to write history, the royals and people like that. But most of the time whether you're talking about - **sort of**¹³ - **crofters**¹²⁰ in Scotland - people living in **mud huts**¹²¹ here, there or wherever.

NI: Well, I think when you live in a mud hut and you can... but you walk out your front door and you can walk

for miles without seeing anybody else that's very different from living in one little **mud hut**¹²¹ with all of your family and then - **y'know**¹² - **stepping out**¹²² and **bumping into**¹²³ the people coming out of the next door neighbour's.

SW: If I may say something about **mud huts**¹²¹: there are very few families that live in one mud hut, mostly the minimum is three.

AM: Three families.

SW: No, three mud huts...

NI: Per family.

SW: Yeah. They're very easy to build.

NI: **There you go**¹²⁴.

SW: And there would be three rooms in a house in the same sense that we...

EM: OK, but, **I mean**¹¹, if you're talking about a **yurt**¹²⁵ in most of Central Asia or if you're talking about **crofters**¹²⁰ **cottages**¹²⁶ in Scotland etc.

SW: Yes.

EM: **I mean**¹¹, that is... it is very normal to have several generations of the same family sleeping in the same living space. The concept of privacy is probably a **pretty**¹²⁷ bourgeois modern concept, I think.

NI: Well, **crofters**¹²⁰ were very poor. They were...

EM: But they were the majority.

NI: Yeah.

EM: So, I'm talking about the majority of people.

NI: Yeah. And - **y'know**¹² - again I think when you have, when you're a little bit wealthier and you'd like to think that the poverty of the **crofters**¹²⁰ is something in Western Europe

nearly¹²⁸ gone. You think, well, why - **y'know**¹² - **if you can afford**¹²⁹ a little bit better why wouldn't you have that?

EM: No, sure, sure, sure. But what I'm really asking is: are we suggesting that the majority of the human population during most of its history have been having these mental-health problems that you're talking about from not having a private space?

NI: I couldn't argue for or against that. I wouldn't know. **I mean**¹¹, and... but I would've thought that for some of them it wasn't a very good thing.

EM: But is it also not **just**⁸ you will have those mental-health problems if you've known having your private space and **suddenly**¹³⁰ you're **stuck in**¹³¹ a situation where you could hear every time your neighbour **goes to the toilet**¹³² or you don't have your own room or...

NI: No, that's certainly true. You know what you've had and lost is obviously a lot worse than what you've never had - that you've never known. And if you've never known silence or complete peace and quiet then **I guess**¹³³ you wouldn't miss it.

AM: **It's kind of like**¹³⁴... I don't know, it came to my mind... it's like being... going to prison **sort of**¹³⁵.

EM: Yeah.

AM: Having lived, I don't know, out in a big house in the country with no neighbours and then moving to the city could be more or less comparable to living in prison in a small **cell**¹³⁶. It definitely can have an effect on your mental health, I think.

¹¹² **on a daily basis** - every day, in a quotidian way

¹¹³ **s gotta be** - (slang) has got to be, must be

¹¹⁴ **size** - dimensions

¹¹⁵ **deal** - (in this case) question

¹¹⁶ **aim** - objective

¹¹⁷ **brick wall** - 

¹¹⁸ **to share sw.** - (in this case) cohabit in

¹¹⁹ **tiny** - minute, very small

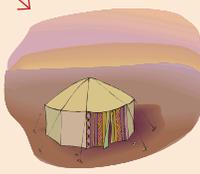
¹²⁰ **crofter** - (historical) sb. who occupied a small rented farm in Scotland

¹²¹ **mud hut** - 

¹²² **to step out** - leave

¹²³ **to bump into** - come across, encounter

¹²⁴ **there you go** - that's the answer

¹²⁵ **yurt** - 

¹²⁶ **cottage** - very small rural house

¹²⁷ **pretty** (adv.) - rather, somewhat, reasonably

¹²⁸ **nearly** - almost, practically

¹²⁹ **if you can afford** - if you have enough money to be able to have

¹³⁰ **suddenly** - abruptly

¹³¹ **to be stuck in** - be put in, be placed in

¹³² **to go to the toilet** (go-went-gone) - (euphemism) urinate

¹³³ **I guess** - I suppose

¹³⁴ **it's kind of like** - it is similar to

¹³⁵ **sort of** - (in this case) more or less

¹³⁶ **(prison) cell** - 

3. Recliner Wars

(8m00s)



Photo by RaBoe

Englishman (EM): So I heard that America's **on the brink of**¹³⁷ a new civil war, is that right?

First American Man (AM1): Oh! Come on! In what way?

Second American Man (AM2): Are you referring to the so called '**Knee**¹³⁸ Defender' **device**¹³⁹?

EM: Exactly. The recliner wars.

AM1: Between the recliners and the **knee**¹³⁸ benders or whatever it is, knee protectors.

Englishwoman (EW): War in the skies. **Knee**¹³⁸ benders.

EM: Apparently there's been some really big **hassle**¹⁴⁰ about **whether**¹⁴¹ people put their chairs back or not on the **planes**¹⁴², no?

AM2: Yeah.

EW: I can **relate to**¹⁴³ that though because, especially of it's a long journey some people are - **like**¹⁰⁸ - really **rude**¹⁴⁴ and sometimes you're doing something, writing on your table...

AM1: Or reading.

EW: ...or eating and the person without even a **polite**¹⁴⁵ 'are you all right there? I'm **gonna**¹⁴ put my chair back' bang and **suddenly**¹⁴⁶ **your dinner's in your chin**¹⁴⁷, you know?

EM: But **I mean**¹¹, isn't that - **sort of**¹³ - the fault of the planes, of the plane companies or the designers?

AM1: Well, I think so.

EW: Yeah, but a little bit of manners or consideration - **y'know**¹² - for someone **just**⁸ to say "I **gonna**¹⁴ **tip** my chair **back**¹⁴⁸".

EM: But the solution... **y'know**¹² - the solution when they do that to you is for you to do it to the next guy behind you until they go back.

EW: Yeah, that's the domino effect.

EM: No, I think that's what tends to happen.

¹³⁷**on the brink of** - close to, on the verge of

¹³⁸**knee** - →

¹³⁹**device** - gadget, mechanism

¹⁴⁰**hassle** - problems, commotion



¹⁴¹**whether** - 'if' (but 'if' cannot be used after a preposition)

¹⁴²**plane** - airplane (US English), aeroplane (UK English)

¹⁴³**to relate to** - understand

¹⁴⁴**rude** - (false friend) impolite, discourteous

¹⁴⁵**polite** - courteous, good-mannered

¹⁴⁶**suddenly** - unexpectedly, abruptly

¹⁴⁷**your dinner's in your chin** - there is no space between your legs and your face

¹⁴⁸**to tip sth. back** - cause sth. to recline



Photo by Oxfordian Kissuth

EW: Yeah, I know.

AM1: What about the **knee jerkers**¹⁴⁹ who keep jerking their **knee**¹³⁸ into your back, you know? Come on, that goes two ways you know.

EW: Oh, yeah. That's true too.

AM1: I **can't stand**¹⁵⁰ it when I've got some 10-year-old **kid**⁶¹ there **just**⁵ **jamming**¹⁵¹ his feet into my back so.

EW: Yeah, I think aeroplanes can cause a lot of tension **just**⁸ for people being in such close proximity and not having enough space.

EM: Yeah, but aren't you... aren't you really about...

AM1: Exactly, that's a good point because the thing is they **cram** us **in**¹⁵² like sardines and then you got people dying because of it.

EM: You are **a bunch of**¹⁵³ hypocrites, you are a bunch of hypocrites.

AM1: What do you mean a bunch of hypocrites?

EM: You want to travel low cost, you want to pay as little as possible...

EW: Oh, in low cost you can't even recline your seats.

AM1: Yeah.

EM: Which is probably better. OK, but I don't mean in what is called low-cost

companies but you want to pay as little as possible. So obviously, I **mean**¹¹, all you're talking about really **nowadays**⁵⁹ is a - **sort of**¹³ - flying bus, flying **coach**¹⁵⁴.

AM1: Yeah, but you get more **room**¹⁵⁵ on a bus.

EM: You're **sticking**¹⁵⁶ as many people as you can together. **Y'know**¹² - that's what you're paying for. If you want to travel better, there are those options. They **just**⁸ cost more.

EW: But they should measure people. **Y'know**¹² passengers with longer legs perhaps shouldn't go behind people

¹⁴⁹ **knee jerker** - (*nonce term*) sb. who attacks the back of your seat with his/her **knees**¹³⁸

¹⁵⁰ **can't stand** - can't bear, hate

¹⁵¹ **to jam** - force

¹⁵² **to cram sb. in** - force sb. into a confined

space

¹⁵³ **a bunch of** - a load of, a lot of

¹⁵⁴ **coach** - →

¹⁵⁵ **room [U]** - space

¹⁵⁶ **to stick** (stick-stuck-stuck) - (*in this case*) put



with longer... I don't know they should **work it out**¹⁵⁷ somehow.

AM1: Man, I fly a lot going **back and forth**⁶ from Europe to the States, well not a lot, but every year or so right? And, man, it is so uncomfortable and **cramped**⁸⁹. They don't give you any **leg room**¹⁵⁸. They don't give you... those companies...

EM: It's cheaper than ever.

AM1: Oh, cheaper than ever? It depends on what time of year you're going, man. Some times of year it's cheaper and others... **it's seasonal**¹⁵⁹ you, know?

EW: Talking about cheap, I once travelled with Aeroflot and everyone said "No, don't do it" and it was the cheapest to get to Japan and there was **loads of**¹⁶⁰ space. I think **'cos**⁴⁴ Russians typically on average are bigger.

AM1: Yeah. Well, Americans are pretty big.

EW: But Aeroflot was fantastic, eh? **Plenty of**¹⁶¹ space.

EM: But, **I mean**¹¹, I have some problems with **width**¹⁶², probably more than the **leg room**¹⁵⁸. I have problems with width on the planes.

AM1: There's not much width either.

EW: Are you a recliner?

EM: I don't... no, I don't like to recline **just**⁸ because - **y'know**¹² - reading and that **sort**¹⁶³ of thing in this - **sort of**¹³ - position I don't like being that



Photo by UserMattes

far back. Probably, we lost that (on the recording). No, but there are worse things in the world than somebody putting their seat forward in front of me. I don't particularly like it, but, **I mean**¹¹, I wouldn't **have a fight**¹⁶⁴ over that. And what surprised me was with all of your **air marshals**¹⁶⁵ and all of your hysteria about planes in America, the people would resist that. I'm surprised they weren't - **sort of**¹³ - being **pinned down**¹⁶⁶ in the **aisle-way**¹⁶⁷ by somebody or **tasered**¹⁶⁸ or something.

AM1: Tasered! Yeah, well that's a whole other **issue**¹⁶⁹ there, tasering.

EW: The most **annoying**¹⁷⁰ thing **actually**³⁴ for me is the **elbow**¹⁷¹. I think they should have elbow defenders. When - **y'know**¹² - especially if you're in the middle and you've got no arm, so there's only one arm

between two. They should have two because that can be really... and some people like to sit like that. And I've seen fights **break out**¹⁷².

EM: You've **actually**³⁴ seen fights over that?

EW: Yeah, yeah, yeah.

AM1: Physical or just...?

EW: Verbal.

AM1: Verbal, OK.

EW: And people demanding to be moved and people...

AM2: I think there's **actually**³⁴ been physical fights in the States.

EM: About the recliners, no?

AM1: Really?

EW: Really?

AM2: Yeah.

AM1: Wow.

EM: People throwing drinks.

AM2: There's one story I read about a guy, I can't remember, if he was



The Knee Defender

¹⁵⁷ **to work it out** - find a solution

¹⁵⁸ **leg room** - space for one's legs

¹⁵⁹ **to be seasonal** - depend on the season/ time of year

¹⁶⁰ **loads of** - a lot of, plenty of

¹⁶¹ **plenty of** - more than enough

¹⁶² **width** - breadth, lateral space

¹⁶³ **sort** - type, kind

¹⁶⁴ **to have a fight** (have-had-had) - have an

argument

¹⁶⁵ **air marshal** - type of police officer on a passenger plane

¹⁶⁶ **to pin sb. down** - immobilize sb. on the ground

¹⁶⁷ **aisle-way** - walkway down the middle of the plane

¹⁶⁸ **to taser sb.** - incapacitate sb. with an electric discharge

¹⁶⁹ **issue** - (in this case) question, controversy

¹⁷⁰ **annoying** - irritating

¹⁷¹ **elbow** - (literally) articulation in the middle of one's arm. **She is in fact referring to the elbow rests** (= the supports for one's elbows)

¹⁷² **to break out** (break-broke-broken) - erupt, start

flying from New York, New York to Denver I think it was and before they **reached**¹⁷³ Chicago, there was an incident. He was using the **knee**¹³⁸ defender and the woman in front of him... I can't remember exactly what happened, what transpired. He agreed to give her more...

AM1: A little more space.

AM2: ...a little more space and then she **took advantage**¹⁷⁴ and reclined her seat all the way and I think **spilled**¹⁷⁵ Coke or she threw Coke on them and then something happen to his **laptop**¹⁷⁶. It got verbal and then it got, I believe it got physical. So, the pilot **diverted**¹⁷⁷ the flight to Chicago.

EW: No!

EM: I heard that three flights have been **diverted**¹⁷⁷ because of it.

AM1: This is getting a little ridiculous, I think.

AM2: Well, the thing is this **knee**¹³⁸ defender **device**¹³⁹ isn't **actually**³⁴ **banned**¹⁷⁸ by the Federal Aviation Agency. But the majority of the airlines are beginning to prohibit the use of them on their flights. And what's interesting though there are also airlines that **just**⁸ don't have reclinable seats to **avoid**¹⁷⁹ this.

EW: Well the cheap, the cheap ones definitely don't.

EM: But it's also... **I mean**¹¹, there's also the case where seats tend to be declined... designed for men and so a lot of the structure of the thing is uncomfortable for women quite often etc. etc. etc. So, **I mean**¹¹, **aside from**¹⁸⁰ - **sort of**¹³ - **stuffing us in**¹⁸¹

like **cattle**¹⁸² or like sardines, there are **all sorts of**¹⁸³ **issues**¹⁸⁴ that **come up**¹⁸⁵ with that.

AM1: Well, there's a - **y'know**¹² - this is all I think probably **gonna**¹⁴ be solved soon because from what I understand they're designing new airplanes where you don't sit, you stand up.

EW: **Standing room**¹⁸⁶ only.

AM1: No, I'm serious.

EW: Really?

AM1: You stand up the whole flight.

EW: I thought that was a **vicious**¹⁸⁷ rumour about Ryanair.

EM: With a **misericord**¹⁸⁸ or...?

AM1: It's got like separations and you stand up. I think there's a little - **like**¹⁰⁸ - **ledge**¹⁸⁹ there that you can rest...

EM: Yeah, a misericord.

AM1: Yeah, but still, **I mean**¹¹, you're standing up because they can **fit in**¹⁹⁰ more people, you know?

EM: So long as my **buttocks**¹⁹¹ get rested I don't care!

EW: No.

AM1: But, come on! Airline companies, they're one of the worse there are, man, except for insurance companies. I think they **top it off**¹⁹².

EM: But while you're on this - **sort of**¹³ - crazy, crazy journey of - **sort of**¹³ - doing these short trips which should be done by rail. **I mean**¹¹, flying should be for long distances and so...

AM1: Today it's... yeah, I agree especially with the high-speed trains we have today.

EM: If they're **gonna**¹⁴ be - **sort of**¹³ - **stuffing** people **in**¹⁸¹ standing for a half-hour flight, it's logical in one sense. But **I mean**¹¹, **y'know**¹² - these people... they should be **investing in**¹⁹³ trains, which are **far more**¹⁹⁴ **environmentally friendly**¹⁹⁵, comfortable, for me, **far more**¹⁹⁴ sexy than planes, and **just**⁸ you know...

AM1: And more fun. I think you get to see more of the countryside.

EM: You're a Sheldon¹⁹⁶, aren't you?

EW: Not on the fast trains.

EM: I like trains.

EW: I love trains.

AM1: Yeah, but I don't **go counting**¹⁹⁷ them.

EM: I've noticed that... I've notice that I enjoy flying less and less and less.

EW: Yeah.

EM: I remember that as a - **sort of**¹³ - late teenager it was **actually**³⁴ something I would **look forward to**¹⁹⁸. Now it's **just**⁸...

AM1: Yeah, I agree, I agree. It's changed a lot. **I mean**¹¹, you have to go through so much security and - **y'know**¹² - sometimes it gets so ridiculous.

EW: Exactly.

EM: Well, the **body search**¹⁹⁹ for me is the best bit!

AM1: That's... - **y'know**¹² - **there's**¹⁹ a lot of **court cases**²⁰⁰ on that about... **'cos**⁴⁴ - **y'know**¹² - they're touching where they shouldn't be touching.

EM: Well, one of the **perks**²⁰¹ of the job!

4. Pronunciation (2m46s)

¹⁷³to reach - get to, arrive in

¹⁷⁴to take advantage (take-took-taken) - use the opportunity

¹⁷⁵to spill -

¹⁷⁶laptop (computer) - portable PC

¹⁷⁷to divert - (false friend) reroute, detour

¹⁷⁸to ban - prohibit

¹⁷⁹to avoid - prevent, circumvent

¹⁸⁰aside from - apart from, as well as

¹⁸¹to stuff sb. in - cram sb. in, force sb. into a confined space

¹⁸²cattle - cows, livestock



¹⁸³all sorts of - a whole variety of

¹⁸⁴issue - controversial question

¹⁸⁵to come up (come-came-come) - (in this case) be suggested

¹⁸⁶standing room - space to stand up

¹⁸⁷vicious - (in this case) malicious

¹⁸⁸misericord - (false friend) protrusion on which to rest one's buttocks¹⁹¹ while standing

¹⁸⁹ledge - horizontal projection

¹⁹⁰to fit in - (in this case)

introduce, include

¹⁹¹buttocks -



¹⁹²to top it off - be the worst case

¹⁹³to invest in - spend money on

¹⁹⁴far more - much more

¹⁹⁵environmentally friendly - eco-friendly

¹⁹⁶a reference to *The Big Bang Theory*

¹⁹⁷to go counting (go-went-gone) - count. **He is referring to the British hobby of 'train spotting'**

¹⁹⁸to look forward to - anticipate with desire

¹⁹⁹body search - process of looking for arms, drugs, etc. on sb's body

²⁰⁰court cases - litigation

²⁰¹perk - bonus, advantage

Monologues: the Future

(14m36s)

How will society be radically different in 50 years' time?

5. Monologue 1 [American English]

(4m05s)



"The United States will soon take a backseat to China."

Photo by Staff Sgt. D. Myles Cullen

What will our society be like 50 years from now? Well, the answer to this question will vary greatly depending on **whether**¹⁴¹ your **take**²⁰² on the world is optimistic or pessimistic. Personally, I tend to see the world through **rose-colored glasses**²⁰³.

I think technology will play an increasingly important role in the future. We'll all be using self-driving cars and paying for **goods**²⁰⁴ and services with our **cellphones**²⁰⁵, watches or implanted microchips. With the **advent**²⁰⁶ of the Internet Age and the increasing importance of **big data**²⁰⁷, all **sorts**¹⁶³ of data will be collected from us, **stored**²⁰⁸ in **the cloud**²⁰⁹ and **pumped into**²¹⁰ algorithms - our entire lives will be digitally documented. This may **scare**²¹¹ a lot of people, but I find this to be fascinating and the potential benefits for everyone could be **huge**⁸⁰. I also believe that technological progress will **lead to**²¹² scientific **breakthroughs**²¹³ and advances in medicine. We'll see cures for cancer and Alzheimer's **disease**²¹⁴ and the emergence of a new **breed**²¹⁵ of machines as the human body becomes a

²⁰²**take** - (in this case) perspective

²⁰³**through rose-colored glasses** (US English) - through rose-tinted glasses (UK English), optimistically

²⁰⁴**goods** - products

²⁰⁵**cellphone** - mobile telephone

²⁰⁶**advent** - arrival

²⁰⁷**big data** - the numerical analysis of complex human activities

²⁰⁸**to store** - keep, preserve

²⁰⁹**the cloud** - network of remote servers on the internet and used to store, manage, and process data

²¹⁰**to pump into** - insert into

²¹¹**to scare** - frighten, alarm

²¹²**to lead to** (lead-led-led) - bring about, result in

²¹³**breakthrough** - advance, discovery

²¹⁴**disease** - illness, sickness

²¹⁵**breed** - (in this case) type, kind, sort



Photo by Base64

computer interface. Computer technology will continue to advance and we'll see artificial intelligence match and, **ultimately**²¹⁶, **overtake**²¹⁷ human-level intelligence. So, a Terminator-like **scenario**²¹⁸ in the not-so-distant future doesn't seem too **far-fetched**²¹⁹.

As far as superpowers **go**²²⁰, I think the United States will soon **take a backseat to**²²¹ China and in the future will also be **surpassed**²²² by Russia. If we examine the economic data of each country, it's quite easy to argue that China is already the world leader. China is already the world's **largest**⁶⁰ manufacturer, the number of Chinese university graduates is **soaring**²²³ and the workforces entering the Chinese economy are **just as**²²⁴ **skilled**²²⁵ as those in the

Western economies. And **taking into account**²²⁶ that China's population is four times bigger than the US's, their **rise**²²⁷ to world economic dominance is inevitable. With the Western financial system having been **bailed out**²²⁸ and the US government's deficit spending, a stratospheric \$17.8 trillion national debt, it's **involvement**²²⁹ in foreign wars and oil dependence, China's position is only strengthened. Even though they will **relinquish**²³⁰ their economic power to China, the US, and the West in general, will continue to be important players in global technology and culture.

We all know that climate change is real and will undoubtedly play an even greater role in determining the political and economic future of the world. The Earth's critical **resources**²³¹

- water, gas, **coal**²³², oil - are finite and with growing populations they are going to be **depleted**²³³ at a much... **staggering**²³⁴ rate unless something is done. **Average**²³⁵ temperatures will increase and **endanger**²³⁶ food production. This will **lead to**²¹² food **shortages**²³⁷ and the **displacement**²³⁸ of populations who become climate refugees **in search of**²³⁹ arable land, food and water. I think a future **scenario**²¹⁸ in which wars are **waged**²⁴⁰ for control of these **resources**²³¹, especially water and what's left of oil, is very **likely**²⁴¹. That said, however, I **truly**²⁴² believe that if humanity **works together**²⁴³ altruistically we can **slow down**²⁴⁴ and **eventually**²⁴⁵ stop climate change.

Now, you ask, 'But I thought you said you see the world **through**

²¹⁶ **ultimately** - (false friend) finally, in the end

²¹⁷ **to overtake** - (take-took/-taken) - surpass, exceed

²¹⁸ **scenario** - (false friend) situation

²¹⁹ **far-fetched** - fantastical, implausible, improbable

²²⁰ **as far as... go** - in terms of..., as regards...

²²¹ **to take a backseat to** (take-took-taken) - be eclipsed by

²²² **to surpass** - overtake, eclipse

²²³ **to soar** - increase exponentially

²²⁴ **just as** - (emphatic) as

²²⁵ **skilled** - specialized, talented

²²⁶ **to take into account** (take-took-taken) -

take into consideration

²²⁷ **rise** - ascent

²²⁸ **to bail out** - rescue

²²⁹ **involvement** - participation

²³⁰ **to relinquish** - lose, give up

²³¹ (natural) **resources** - things of value that occur naturally

²³² **coal** - 

²³³ **to deplete** - use up, exhaust

²³⁴ **staggering** - shocking,

very surprising

²³⁵ **average** - median, typical

²³⁶ **to endanger** - put at risk, put in danger

²³⁷ **shortages** - scarcity

²³⁸ **displacement** - movement

²³⁹ **in search of** - trying to find

²⁴⁰ **to wage (war)** - start a conflict

²⁴¹ **likely** - probable

²⁴² **truly** - honestly

²⁴³ **to work together** - collaborate, cooperate

²⁴⁴ **to slow sth. down** - cause sth. to decelerate

²⁴⁵ **eventually** - (false friend) in the end



rose-colored glasses²⁰³? A lot of what you described seems like a **doom-and-gloom**²⁴⁶ **scenario**²¹⁸ for the future. OK, sure, I accept that. But I still consider myself an **overall**²⁴⁷ optimist. While many of these **issues**²⁴⁸ will require a drastic change in the current economic and political models, I have faith in humanity and that we will come together, **pool** our **resources**²⁴⁹ to solve these problems and create a better world for us all.

6. Monologue 2

[British English]

(2m11s)

Well, 50 years' time? On the one hand, it's well over a lifetime for me, but also it's not really a very long time. **I mean**¹¹, I remember 30-odd years ago watching *Back to the Future* and - **y'know**¹² - in the 80's thinking about the year 2000 and thinking about the year 2010 even and thinking how super-modern and how futuristic it would all be. **And yet**²⁵⁰, here we are still no tele-transportation, still no **rocket boots**²⁵¹ and - **y'know**¹² - here we are in 2014 it's **actually**³⁴ a little bit **disappointing**²⁵². **I mean**¹¹, apart from travel and communication, the internet and mobile phones and that **kind**²⁵³ of technology, **there's**¹⁹ still a lot for problems that we seem to be - **y'know**¹² - not really much better off than we were perhaps 50 years, 100 years ago. **There's**¹⁹ still wars **going on**⁶³ everywhere, there's still **starvation**²⁵⁴, there's still so much poverty, **there's**¹⁹ still people dying because they don't have enough water. So



Photo by Olivier Bresmal

- **y'know**¹² - when people talk about advancement and **development**²⁵⁵, perhaps they're the areas that we'd like to see some changes. **Y'know**¹²

- with all the money in the world why can't everybody **be fed**²⁵⁶, why can't everybody have a house? **Y'know**¹² - why is there not a cure for cancer?

²⁴⁶ **doom-and-gloom** - pessimistic

²⁴⁷ **overall** - in general

²⁴⁸ **issue** - (in this case) question

²⁴⁹ **to pool one's resources** - work collectively

²⁵⁰ **and yet** - despite this, even so

²⁵¹ **rocket boots** - footwear that enables you to fly

²⁵² **disappointing** - discouraging, depressing

²⁵³ **kind** - sort, type

²⁵⁴ **starvation** - hunger, malnutrition

²⁵⁵ **development** - (in this case) improvement

²⁵⁶ **to be fed** - receive food

Perhaps it's because there's... it's of human nature. Maybe that's the thing that needs to change... **whereas**²⁵⁷ human nature, we're not really going to change. From the beginning of time **there's**¹⁹ been **power-hungry**²⁵⁸ people who want to control other people, who want to fight for territory, who want to fight for their religion. So, perhaps, hopefully in the future we can see an end to that, an end to - **y'know**¹² - these tyrants who are trying to control people in the names of all these things. So, perhaps that's what I'd like to see. Yes, peace.

7. Monologue 3

[American English]

(4m28s)

What's the world going to be like in 50 years? Well, that's a good question. If we're here in 50 years. I heard something, of course it could be a rumour, but I heard something about NASA saying we're all going to be kaput in 30 years so. But, how is it going to be? Well, looking at it from the point of view of the **environment**²⁵⁹, and I don't see a very **pretty picture**²⁶⁰. I think we've **pretty much**²⁶¹ **gone beyond**²⁶² what the Earth can **handle**²⁶³ **as far as**²⁶⁴ population and with the global warming I see **major**²⁶⁵ **havoc**²⁶⁶ occurring in the future. Agriculture has been the basis of our culture going back thousands of years and it's what has really kept our society going or humanity going. It's the - **y'know**¹²

- **development**²⁵⁵ of agriculture. And with the changes going as quickly as they are with the climate I see there being **major**²⁶⁵ problems with providing enough food if we start having - **y'know**¹² - **major**²⁶⁵ **crop failures**²⁶⁷ **due to**²⁶⁸ climate change. I - **kind of**²⁶⁹ - see the rich **digging in**²⁷⁰, they'll be able to take care of themselves, but the poor will be out suffering - **y'know**¹² - the effects of the **environment**²⁵⁹, be it **starvation**²⁵⁴ or be it contamination of our bodies. But I think there's **gonna**¹⁴ be a lot of **upheaval**²⁷¹ in the future or I think we're **gonna**¹⁴ have probably class war. The rich are going to try to **hold on**²⁷² and keep themselves comfortable while the rest suffer. I see **starvation**²⁵⁴, plague and **disease**²¹⁴. I don't see a **pretty picture**²⁶⁰ for the next 50 years and I don't think

technology's **gonna**¹⁴ save us out of this one. Maybe they'll be... I think **pretty much**²⁶¹ most of humanity is going to die off and if we're **lucky**²⁷³ there'll be enough people left to hopefully **carry on**²⁷⁴ - **y'know**¹² - **mankind**²⁷⁵. We'll see, but I'm not very positive. I think that already the oceans are being **overfished**²⁷⁶. There's **major**²⁶⁵ contamination in the oceans. All our fish are full of chemicals. Once the ocean's gone I don't see much hope for the rest of the world. And because money is the god of capitalism we're not going to change in time. The governments are too slow to react. The scientists are telling us - **y'know**¹² - we have to act now. If we don't, it's going to be too late. So, hopefully governments, I hope... on the side of optimism, I hope that **within the year**²⁷⁷ or now,

McCarty Glacier - Alaska



Photo by Ulysses Sherman Grant & Bruce F Molnia

²⁵⁷ **whereas** - by contrast

²⁵⁸ **power-hungry** - megalomaniac

²⁵⁹ **environment** - eco-system

²⁶⁰ **pretty picture** - inspiring perspective

²⁶¹ **pretty much** - more or less

²⁶² **to go beyond** (go-went-gone) - exceed, surpass

²⁶³ **to handle** - (in this case) sustain

²⁶⁴ **as far as** - as regards, in terms of

²⁶⁵ **major** - (in this case) serious

²⁶⁶ **havoc** - chaos

²⁶⁷ **crop failure** - bad harvest, agricultural disaster

²⁶⁸ **due to** - because of

²⁶⁹ **kind of** - (pause filler) sort of, like, y'know, I mean

²⁷⁰ **to dig in** (dig-dug-dug) - establish a defensive position

²⁷¹ **upheaval** - chaos

²⁷² **to hold on** (hold-held-held) - resist

²⁷³ **lucky** - fortunate

²⁷⁴ **to carry on** - continue

²⁷⁵ **mankind** - humanity

²⁷⁶ **to overfish (an ocean)** - exhaust the marine life (in an ocean)

²⁷⁷ **within the year** - in less than 12 months' time



Photo by Cronus Caelestis

soon, governments all join together and we become... and we start thinking of ourselves as one world and not different countries, but one world and we all **share**²⁷⁸ the same planet and hopefully governments will start doing something about it. And hopefully people will pressure governments to do something about it. But **from the looks of**²⁷⁹ the past, I don't see it happening. So, if you believe in God, **pray**²⁸⁰ and hopefully God saves us. But - **y'know**¹² - that all depends on how you look at things. But I **do think**²⁸¹ we're **gonna**¹⁴ need to do a lot of praying.

8. Monologue 4 [British English] (3m52s)

How will society be different in 50 years' time? Well, I won't be around **for a start**²⁸². This is quite liberating because it means I can predict without fear of contradiction. I suppose the first **concern**²⁸³ would be the **environment**²⁸⁴. To be honest, I'm not particularly worried about the survival of humanity in

environmental²⁸⁴ terms, at least not in the space of half a century. We are an incredibly **resourceful**²⁸⁵ species and I expect we will find a solution to all our problems. Having said that, the world will certainly be an uglier, less bio-diverse place, probably with no **large**⁷⁶ fauna in the wild. Wildlife will be small creatures like rodents and insects that can survive on the margins of human society **largely**²⁸⁶ undetected. Not a very nice thought. My **main**²⁸⁷ cause for optimism is nuclear fusion. In 50 years' time we should have this, which will mean essentially free, limitless energy with practically no **drawbacks**²⁸⁸. With

²⁷⁸ **to share** - (in this case) cohabit on

²⁷⁹ **from the looks of** - judging from what has occurred in

²⁸⁰ **to pray** - ask God for a solution

²⁸¹ **do think** - (emphatic) think

²⁸² **for a start** - for one thing

²⁸³ **concern** - worry, preoccupation

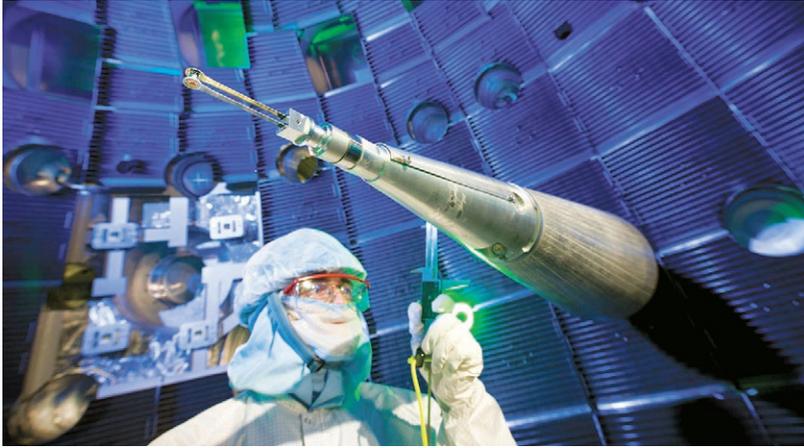
²⁸⁴ **environmental** - ecological

²⁸⁵ **resourceful** - inventive, creative

²⁸⁶ **largely** - more or less

²⁸⁷ **main** - principal, primary

²⁸⁸ **drawback** - disadvantage



Nuclear fission

Photo by National Ignition Facility - Lawrence Livermore National Laboratories



No more lions

Photo by Chris Willis

free, limitless energy you can do almost whatever you want, turn deserts green for example. This will bring a profound change to the economy and have many long-term benefits for the **environment**²⁸⁹.

Right now my biggest **concern**²⁸³ is social. I perceive an **attempt**²⁸⁹

worldwide²⁹⁰ to establish a new aristocracy. From members of the Chinese communist party to Russian oligarchs, to Western **CEOs**²⁹¹ there seems to be a concerted effort to install a small minority in power who have wealth and privileges **beyond the dreams of**²⁹² the majority and

are **above**²⁹³ the law. For the moment these new aristocracies are often operating in systems that are formally democratic. However, their conduct will inevitably undermine and **hollow out**²⁹⁴ democracy. Their consolidation is a direct **challenge to**²⁹⁵ any idea that capitalism is meritocratic. **Indeed**²⁹⁶, it will **eventually**²⁴⁵ destroy capitalism as an efficient system. The advance of these people **spells**²⁹⁷ inequality, corruption and dislocation for society. **Large**⁷⁶ corporations controlled by these new aristocracies will migrate from one country to another looking to pay minimum **wages**²⁹⁸ and taxes and also to influence the political system. The state will have **fewer and fewer resources**²⁹⁹ to **foster**³⁰⁰ the majority and will become increasingly authoritarian. My ideal is probably the Western European model of social-democracy that existed a few decades ago. Unfortunately, I think we're moving towards something much more like Russian democracy.

Yesterday it was reported that a new CEO of a **major**³⁰¹ US corporation was to be given an \$84 million pay package. Isn't that obscene? Is the idea to guarantee that his great-grandchildren live in luxury? If not, I can't understand these **figures**³⁰². For society to function we need a generous but reasonable **cap**³⁰³ on top salaries, a legal system that is **truly**³⁰⁴ impartial and a renewed emphasis on the dangers of extreme inequality. If we do that, then we can create a **brave new world**³⁰⁵ with all that energy from nuclear fusion. **Even so**³⁰⁶, there won't be any rhinos, lions, elephants or **whales**³⁰⁷ in it.

²⁸⁹ **attempt** - effort

²⁹⁰ **worldwide** - globally

²⁹¹ **CEO** - chief executive officer, managing director

²⁹² **beyond the dreams of** - that are unimaginable for

²⁹³ **above** - (in this case) outside, unaffected by

²⁹⁴ **to hollow out** - make sth. nominal as

opposed to real and effective

²⁹⁵ **challenge to** - affront to, offence against

²⁹⁶ **indeed** - (emphatic) in fact

²⁹⁷ **to spell** - mean, imply

²⁹⁸ **wages** - salaries (typically for manual work)

²⁹⁹ **fewer and fewer resources** - less and less money/capital

³⁰⁰ **to foster** - look after, care for

³⁰¹ **major** - (in this case) important

³⁰² **figures** - (in this case) numbers, sums

³⁰³ **cap** - limit

³⁰⁴ **truly** - really, genuinely

³⁰⁵ **brave new world** - utopia

³⁰⁶ **even so** - despite this, however

³⁰⁷ **whale** - cetacean

9. Improvisation:

The Soccer³⁰⁸ Fan

(4m03s)

Phil (P): So, Darren did you watch the game last night?

Darren (Da): Oh, I did and I have to say...

P: I'm sure you're happy.

Da: We **stuffed**³⁰⁹ you! We stuffed you 2-0. No reply, a **slaughter**³¹⁰, a humiliation.

P: Yeah, I'm positive the **ref**³¹¹ was...

Da: I'm surprised you could show your face here this morning, **mate**³¹².

P: I'm sure the **ref**³¹¹ was... he was obviously paid for his services last night because there was one **call**³¹³ in our favour.

Da: We **were all over**³¹⁴... we were all over you from start to finish.

P: **I'll give you**³¹⁵ that you got us in the second half, but the first half it **was up for grabs**³¹⁶ and I think we **went downhill**³¹⁷ in the second half **just**⁸ because of the ref. It was

outrageous³¹⁸.

Da: No, you **were running up and down the bands**³¹⁹, couldn't get pass our defence. It was a slaughter from start to finish. One of the **bravest**³²⁰ of our... of our **outings**³²¹ this year.

P: The ref was obviously - **y'know**¹² - he was calling everything in your guys' favour. **I mean**¹¹, come on we had three or four yellow cards in the first 10 minutes. **I mean**¹¹, what was that? You guys were...

Da: Well, I think, given they should've been red, I think it was you guys who were buying the **referee**³²².

P: **Y'know**¹² - your players are all fabulous actors.

Deborah (De): You guys **just**³²³ played football. I... this weekend I helped to save an orca. How about that?

Da: You helped to save an orca?

P: An orca?

De: An orca, yes!

Da: How did you that?

De: It was wonderful. We had to get this orca out of the marina where it was... the park where it was being tortured. And we got it onto the back of a **truck**³²⁴ that we'd stolen and we **rushed**³²⁵ through all the **back streets**³²⁶ so that nobody



Photo by Dom Fellowes

³⁰⁸ **soccer** (US English) - football (UK English)

³⁰⁹ **to stuff sb.** - triumph over sb. convincingly

³¹⁰ **slaughter** - (literally) massacre

³¹¹ **ref** - referee³²²

³¹² **mate** - (in this case) my friend

³¹³ **call** - (in this case) referee's decision

³¹⁴ **to be all over sb.** - dominate sb.

³¹⁵ **I'll give you** - (in this case) I'll concede

³¹⁶ **the first half was up for grabs** - either

team could have **won the first half**

³¹⁷ **to go downhill** (go-went-gone)

- deteriorate

³¹⁸ **outrageous** - scandalous

³¹⁹ **to be run up and down the bands** (run-ran-run) - (dialect/colloquial) move around a lot but achieve little benefit as a result

³²⁰ **bravest** - most courageous, best

³²¹ **outing** - (in this case) match

³²² **referee** - 

³²³ **just** - (in this case) only

³²⁴ **truck** (US English) - lorry (UK English)

³²⁵ **to rush** - hurry, (in this case) drive quickly

³²⁶ **backstreet** - minor street (in contrast to 'main road')



Photo by Dave Nolan

could **find out**³²⁷ where we were going.

Da: I didn't know there were any orcas in Bexhill.

P: How did...?

De: We got it out of the theme park and it was the most...

P: Wait a minute.

De: It was the most **amazing**³²⁸ **race**³²⁹ before the theme park owner could, could try and **get**³³⁰ us but we **managed**³³¹, we managed to save it.

Da: And what did you do? What was your part in this?

P: Were you driving the **truck**³²⁴?

De: Well, I was watching it all, the same way as you were watching football. It's the same thing, you were thousands of miles away from the team. I was thousands of miles away from the orca but I...

Da: Well it's not quite... not quite the same thing.

De: You identify with your football team in exactly the same way that I could identify with something that was at least **worth saving**³³², an animal. You **just**⁸ sit and watch living animals running around in a field fighting each other.

Da: We are the Blues!

De: That's the problem, isn't it? That's what you think you are.

Da: We are! We are, we are the blues.

P: And how could saving an orca be anywhere near the same level as **soccer**³⁰⁸. **I mean**¹, I'm sorry, especially if you didn't even participate.

Da: If you're doing it, but you're watching...

De: And you participated in the **soccer**³⁰⁸ game? Definitely, saving an orca is so...

Da: You were watching on TV **putting a big 'fish' on a crane**³³³, right?

³²⁷ **to find out** (find-found-found) - discover

³²⁸ **amazing** - incredible

³²⁹ **race** - (in this case) chase

³³⁰ **to get** (get-got-got) - catch, capture

³³¹ **to manage to** - be able to (with difficulty)

³³² **to be worth saving** - merit being saved

³³³ **to put a big fish on a crane** - →

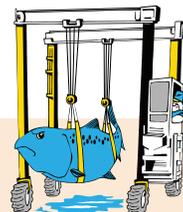




Photo by Robert Pittman

De: And you were watching... how many? 22 people **rushing around**³³⁴ a field, a field after a ball that in the end **counts for nothing**³³⁵.

Da: 11 glorious warriors fighting war by other means.

De: At least I saved an **endangered**³³⁶... an endangered animal.

P: But I think the orca was perfectly fine at the amusement park. I don't see why...

De: You didn't hear that it was being tortured and it was going to die?

Da: Did he tell you that himself?

De: None of your 22 men were about to die, none of them did die and they will play again next week.

10. Picture Description (3m43s)

Examinee: Hi.

Examiner: **How ya' doin'**³³⁷, AmyJo?

Examinee: I'm OK.

Examiner: Good. I'd like you to describe those two photographs that you have in front of you and tell me what you see.

Examinee: Yeah, no problem. Well, this first one here looks, I'd say, perhaps a Japanese girl, a very typical style like the singers. I don't know how to describe the - **kind of**²⁶⁹ - 'punk' - **kind of**²⁶⁹ - style,

very sweet looking. She's got a red **beret**³³⁸, she's **holding**³³⁹ her skirt in a **kind**²⁵³ of a **curtsy**³⁴⁰... like a **kilt**³⁴¹ and she's got a peace sign on her T-shirt and she's looking at the camera in a very - **kind of**²⁶⁹ - innocent way. That **kind**²⁵³ of style that they seem to like there, the innocent schoolgirl type of look. And she's in a park. It's all very fresh and clean. And the other one is also a young-looking boy or girl, quite androgynous I'd say, very... not even punk, perhaps gothic, with half his head **shaved**³⁴², lots of black **eyeliner**³⁴³, a dog collar around his **neck**³⁴⁴, piercing in his nose. I'm saying he, but it's very difficult to

³³⁴ **to rush around** - run about

³³⁵ **to count for nothing** - be of no significance

³³⁶ **endangered** - in danger of extinction

³³⁷ **how ya' doin'** - how are you doing?, what's up?

³³⁸ **beret** - type of soft hat (see photo)

³³⁹ **to hold** (hold-held-held) - grip, have in one's hand

³⁴⁰ **curtsy** - 

³⁴¹ **kilt** - Scottish skirt

³⁴² **shaved** - with all the hair



eliminated

³⁴³ **eyeliner** - cosmetic used to draw a line around the eyes to accentuate them

³⁴⁴ **one's neck** - the part of one's body between one's head and one's torso

tell... ear pierced, a bit more of a dark image, although also is expression is very innocent. He's looking very poetically at the camera.

Examiner: OK, well, let me ask you something. In your own experience do you think people adopt a specific look to express themselves or maybe to **mask**³⁴⁵ their true personality or to **hide**³⁴⁶ themselves? **Y'know**¹² - why would people dress certain ways?

Examinee: Well, that's a really interesting question and it's a big question and I think **actually**³⁴ through experience it's a bit of both, you know. Some people use an image to **fit into**³⁴⁷ a **crowd**³⁴⁸ that they perhaps don't necessarily identify with their personality, but - **y'know**¹² - it's easy to put on **makeup**³⁴⁹, cut your hair a certain way and people make pre-suppositions about you. So, you don't need to explain, you know. If you put an **earring through** your **nose**³⁵⁰ or a **safety pin**³⁵¹ through your **eyebrow**³⁵² and put a Mohican, people are always, 'Oh, he's a punk. He's got this attitude' or 'she... anti-establishment'. But not necessarily. I know a lot of punks who are the sweetest, sweetest people, animal lovers, vegetarians - **y'know**¹² - probably even love the Queen. But **just**⁸ because of the way they look it's easier to express something. And then, of course, from these stereotypes there are truths and perhaps this girl looking all sweet and innocent isn't really.



Photo by Patrick Hsu



Photo by Adrian Wagner

Examiner: Yeah, yeah.

Examinee: She could be an **axe-murderer**³⁵³!

Examiner: Yeah, well, let me ask you another question.

Examinee: **Go on**³⁵⁴.

Examiner: Do you think there's a difference in the style, the way people dress in the city and people in the country?

Examinee: Totally, yeah I think.

Examiner: And why would that be?

Examinee: Well, a city is more **up-to-date**³⁵⁵ perhaps with the **trends**³⁵⁶ and it's a lot faster.

There's¹⁹ perhaps a lot more cultural things **going on**⁶³, people **dress up**³⁵⁷ to go to the theatre, to go to dinner. And perhaps in the country, especially if they're farmers, you **wanna**⁴⁷ be more comfortable, **get your wellies**³⁵⁸ **on**³⁵⁹ and your **dungarees**³⁶⁰ and there's no real cause to wear **high heels**³⁶¹ or - **y'know**¹² - **put eye makeup**³⁴⁹ **on**³⁶². It purely depends. I'm sure **there's**¹⁹ lots of people who **put their stilettos**³⁶³ **on**³⁶² and go down to the post office.

Examiner: OK. Well, thank you.

Examinee: My pleasure.

³⁴⁵to mask - hide, camouflage, conceal

³⁴⁶to hide (hide-hid-hidden) - camouflage, conceal

³⁴⁷to fit into - integrate with

³⁴⁸crowd - (in this case) group of people

³⁴⁹makeup - cosmetics

³⁵⁰earring through one's nose -



³⁵¹safety pin -

³⁵²eyebrow - the strip of hair above one's eye

³⁵³axe-murderer - psychopath who kills people with an axe

³⁵⁴to go on (go-went-gone) - continue

³⁵⁵up-to-date - modern, contemporary

³⁵⁶trend - tendency, fashion

³⁵⁷to dress up - (in this case) wear formal clothes

³⁵⁸wellies - wellington boots



³⁵⁹to get sth. on (get-got-got) - put sth. on, dress in sth., wear sth.

³⁶⁰dungarees -

³⁶¹high heels - stilettos³⁶³

³⁶²to put sth. on (put-put-put) - wear

³⁶³stiletto - a high-heeled shoe



EXERCISES



PAGE	EXERCISE	PAGE	EXERCISE
112	1. Illustrations round-up: see if you can identify most of the objects and actions illustrated in the footnotes of this issue.	121	16. Comprehension multiple choice: relates to the Anglo-Saxon women article on pp. 24-25.
113	2. Title Tag: can you match these alternative titles to the news, language news, technology news and science news articles on pp. 7-12? 3. Jane Austen: test your knowledge of the world's favourite woman novelist and where she lived (pp. 39-41).	122	17. Phrasal Verbs Round-up: how many new phrasal verbs have you learned this month? 18. Phrasal Verbs: this tests for the verbs presented on p. 83. 19. Idioms: have you learned the expressions from pp. 80-81?
114	4. Word Search: find science-related terms from pp. 10-11 and 19-21.	123	20. False friends: did you learn the women-related false cognates on p. 82? 21. False Friends Round-up: test to see if you learned the false friends marked in the footnotes throughout the magazine. 22. Wordplay: another word game - relating to the society article on pp. 42-43.
115	5. Lady Jane Grey. See if you have absorbed these expressions from pp. 28-30. 6. Language: test your understanding of sexist language (pp. 66-68).	124	23. Reading comprehension: how well did you understand the article on women pirates? (pp. 34-36) 24. Internet Listening: test your listening comprehension with this fascinating talk about why there are so few women at the top.
116	7. Crossword for revision of vocabulary from throughout the magazine.	125	25. Celtic names: diverse exercises in relation to the article on pp. 74-77. 26. US vs. UK: matching words in British and American English (p. 78).
117	8. Homophones: correct the homophones in this text about why people seek therapy in the UK today (pp. 16-17).	126	27. Grammar Focus and Word Building: a review of gender-related words (pp. 70-73). 28. Cinema: trivia questions about the career of Bette Davis (pp. 62-65).
118	9. Debates: listening comprehension for audio tracks 1-3 (pp. 88-100).	127	29. Prepositions: fill the gaps in this text by Isabella Bird (pp. 44-45). 30. Monologues: a true-false listening comprehension on audio tracks 5-8, pp. 101-106.
119	10. Too many words: correct this economics text (p. 14). 11. Reading comprehension: work out the questions to these answers relating to the Boudica article (pp. 22-23). 12. Chronology: put these events from the life of Mary Wollstonecraft in the right order (pp. 37-38).	128	31. Wordplay: test your vocabulary and understanding of English morphology.
120	13. Pronunciation: an exercise relating to the article on p. 79. 14. Pronunciation: revision of the difficult words from throughout the magazine. 15. Listening comprehension: a multiple-choice exercise relating to the improvisation (audio track 9, pp. 107-109).	129	32. Etymology: a 'call my bluff' group exercise on the origins of the word 'witch' (pp. 31-33).
		130	33. Sentence transformation: revise structures from throughout the issue.
		131-133	ANSWERS

1. Illustrations Round-Up. Many of the definitions in the footnotes are illustrated. Test how well you have learned the meanings of these words by matching the pictures to their definition. Notice that we have changed [many] of the pictures to help you fix the concept in your mind:



- | | | | | |
|----------------------|--------------------|---------------------|---------------|----------|
| a bear | a butterfly | a kettle | a pawn | a stamp |
| a bee | a coach | a knee | a poodle | a sword |
| a beetle | a coffin | a magnet | a prison cell | a toad |
| a belt | an eraser/a rubber | a necklace | a referee | a turnip |
| a bishop | a fly | a needle and thread | a safety pin | a wolf |
| a brick wall | a goat | a nurse | a shipwreck | a yurt |
| a broomstick | to be hanged | an oven | to spill | |
| to brush one's teeth | high-heeled shoe | a paintbrush | to spin | |
| bunk beds | a hut | a park bench | | |

2. Title Tag. Read i. **the News** (pp. 7-9) and ii. **Science and Technology News** (pp. 10-12) articles. Then try to match the alternative titles given below to the originals, without looking at the magazine. This can be as one or two exercises:

i.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Modest Weddings Make Lasting Marriages | a. Discrimination in Black and White |
| 2. National Pride | b. Cornish was Cornered |
| 3. Still Two Nations | c. Christmas Without the Nativity |
| 4. Normal | d. How is this possible? |
| 5. The Secret Policemen's Balls-up | e. Would you get McMarried? |
| 6. The Goddess of Terrorism? | f. If you overshare I'll photobomb you! |
| 7. The Celtic Fringe Mystery | g. British Fortitude |
| 8. Litigious Language | h. Downton Dog Dies Due to Name |
| 9. Words of the Year | i. Anti-Terrorism Out of Control |

ii.

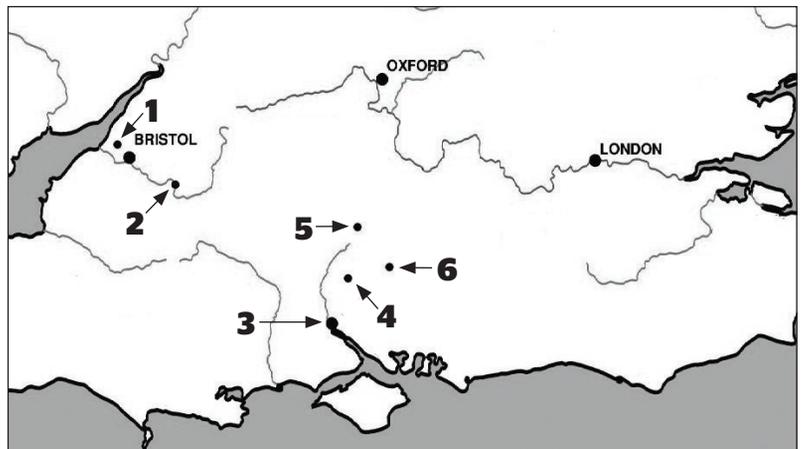
- | | |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Pasta: Better Baked | a. Olfactory Early Warning |
| 2. Fish: Off the Menu | b. FB Friends Favoured Over Family? |
| 3. No Smells Spells Death | c. The Sinister Side of SMS |
| 4. Ancients Stuck to their Gums | d. Is Seafood Selfish? |
| 5. Walking Cures | e. A Reading Exercise |
| 6. Gum-Runners | f. Cannelloni Can Spag Bol |
| 7. Messages from the Afterlife | g. Latin Lessons in Oral Hygiene |
| 8. Incommunicado | h. No Pain, No Gain for Arthritics |
| 9. Low-Tech Panacea | i. Athletes Glum Over Gums |

3. These are the names of **Jane Austen's seven novels**. However, there has been a problem at the printers' and some of the words have got mixed up. Can you sort out the correct titles?

- | | | | |
|------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Sensibility</i> | <i>Pride & Persuasion</i> | <i>Abbey</i> | <i>Emma Mansfield</i> |
| <i>Northanger Park</i> | <i>Prejudice</i> | <i>Sense & Sanditon</i> | |

ii. Jane Austen is associated with a number of places in southern England, can you place them on the map?

- a. Steventon (1775, 1785-1801)
- b. Bath (1801-06)
- c. Clifton (1806)
- d. Southampton (1807-1809)
- e. Chawton ((1809-1816)
- f. Winchester (1817)



4. The **wordbox** contains 25 words taken from the *Women & Science: Not Just Marie Curie* (pp. 19-21) and *Science & Technology* (pp. 10-11) articles (plus a few other common scientific terms). Use the definitions and clues to find the words.

- This person studies celestial bodies (planets, stars etc.) and the universe; also known as an astrophysicist.
- This is someone who has done advanced study in a discipline.
- This type of scientific work involves the collection of data outside of the laboratory.
- These acids are the molecular basis of genes; the use of this genetic fingerprint is widely used in criminal science investigations.
- Essay or thesis on a certain subject which explains facts and principles and provides conclusions.
- Alexander Fleming discovered this antibiotic that is produced by mould. It is commonly used to treat infections and other diseases.
- A celestial body made up of ice and dust that produces a tail as it orbits the sun; Halley's _____. The ESA landed on one in November 2014.
- This science studies the history of the Earth through rocks.
- A neurotransmitter found in the central nervous system, gastrointestinal tract and blood platelets; it is believed to play an important role in depression and bipolar disorder.
- Hormone secreted by the pancreas; type 1 diabetics must inject this hormone to survive.
- This term describes a scientist who specializes in the study of natural history (e.g. botany or zoology).
- In living organisms, this process refers to eating and digesting food and disposing of waste materials; a thin person is commonly described as having a fast _____.
- The study of planets, stars and other celestial bodies in the universe.

C	H	E	M	I	S	T	R	Y	E	R	U	H	C	O	R	E
B	O	A	C	H	C	I	T	S	I	L	A	R	U	T	A	N
A	T	M	D	A	U	L	N	I	L	U	S	N	I	F	P	T
R	K	B	E	F	S	E	I	R	A	V	O	T	D	G	J	O
H	L	O	M	T	R	A	N	S	F	A	T	S	T	N	E	M
A	S	T	R	O	N	O	M	E	R	H	D	E	U	I	F	O
E	L	A	L	R	P	E	N	I	C	I	L	L	I	N	I	L
T	G	N	Y	U	Y	R	A	O	Y	L	M	Y	T	O	E	O
F	S	I	G	E	O	M	E	T	R	Y	C	M	J	T	L	G
A	E	S	O	I	W	C	B	M	I	E	G	O	S	O	D	Y
R	I	T	L	R	A	L	O	H	C	S	D	N	K	R	W	R
C	C	A	O	M	L	E	I	S	M	I	G	O	U	E	O	I
H	E	R	E	D	I	T	A	R	Y	T	H	R	G	S	R	V
C	P	F	G	T	P	X	N	S	N	A	K	T	R	W	K	N
T	S	M	S	I	L	O	B	A	T	E	M	S	T	P	D	E
I	T	V	O	L	U	N	T	E	E	R	I	A	U	O	T	U
W	L	U	M	T	Y	G	O	L	O	T	N	O	E	L	A	P

- Adjective used to describe diseases, traits and other features that are genetically transferred.
- Black magic or the art of sorcery.
- The study of ancient plants and animals based on fossilized remains.
- A biologist or naturalist who specializes in the study of plants.
- This part of mathematics deals with the measurement, properties, and relationships of points, lines, angles, surfaces, and solids.
- Natural fats that have been heated to very high temperatures and have then had hydrogen bubbled through them.
- Adjective used to describe diseases, traits and other features that are genetically transferred.
- The study of insects.
- Female reproductive organs that produce eggs and secrete estrogen and progesterone.
- The category of biological classification between the family and the species.
- A person who voluntarily participates in a scientific study or research.
- The category of biological classification below the genus consisting of related organisms.
- Science dealing with the composition, properties and reactions of substances.

5. Lady Jane Grey. Read the article on pp. 28-30. Then, without looking back, try to complete the following sentences with expressions from the text:

1. When the politician was unjustly accused of corruption, his friends and colleagues rallied b_____d him.
2. The judge decided that the home-grown terrorists should be t_____d for treason, a sentence which potentially carried the death penalty.
3. Emma is determined to be the mistress of her own d_____y rather than depending on some man for financial and emotional support.
4. William Blake was a leading f_____e in radical circles as well as being a poet and a painter.
5. Her mother suggested that she should find out if he is interested in a serious relationship before s_____g with him.
6. Until the mid-17th Century, heretics and witches were burnt at the s_____e.
7. There is a period of around three weeks between the moment that one contracts Ebola and when one f_____s seriously ill.
8. He took a course in Early Modern English because he wanted to read Shakespeare in the o_____l.
9. Are you sure she's the one you want to be with for the rest of your life? Marry in h_____,e, repent at leisure...
10. There are half a dozen phrases from Alexander Pope's poetry that have made their w_____y into everyday English.
11. The Tudors took the throne by force of arms and were never seriously challenged by the rightful c_____s.
12. Steve is f_____s with some very artsy people. His birthday parties are always amusingly exotic.
13. What the government has f_____d to grasp is that by doing nothing they are only making the problem worse.
14. My lawyer suggested that if I p_____d guilty, the court may treat me leniently.
15. The champion was s_____d of her title when it was discovered that she had taken a performance-enhancing drug.
16. All was going well and then suddenly disaster s_____k; our fan belt broke and we weren't carrying a replacement.
17. The children were playing under the watchful e_____e of their nursery-school teacher.

6. Swearing & Sexism. Read the article on pp. 66-68. Then choose the best alternative to fill the gaps without referring back to the article:

1. English swearing is dominated by (blasphemy/sex) and scatology.
2. Insults referring to male genitals are (less/more) offensive than those referring to female genitalia.
3. The meaning of female terms tend to (ameliorate/pejorate) over time.
4. English (is/isn't) the only European language in which this process (see 4) takes place.

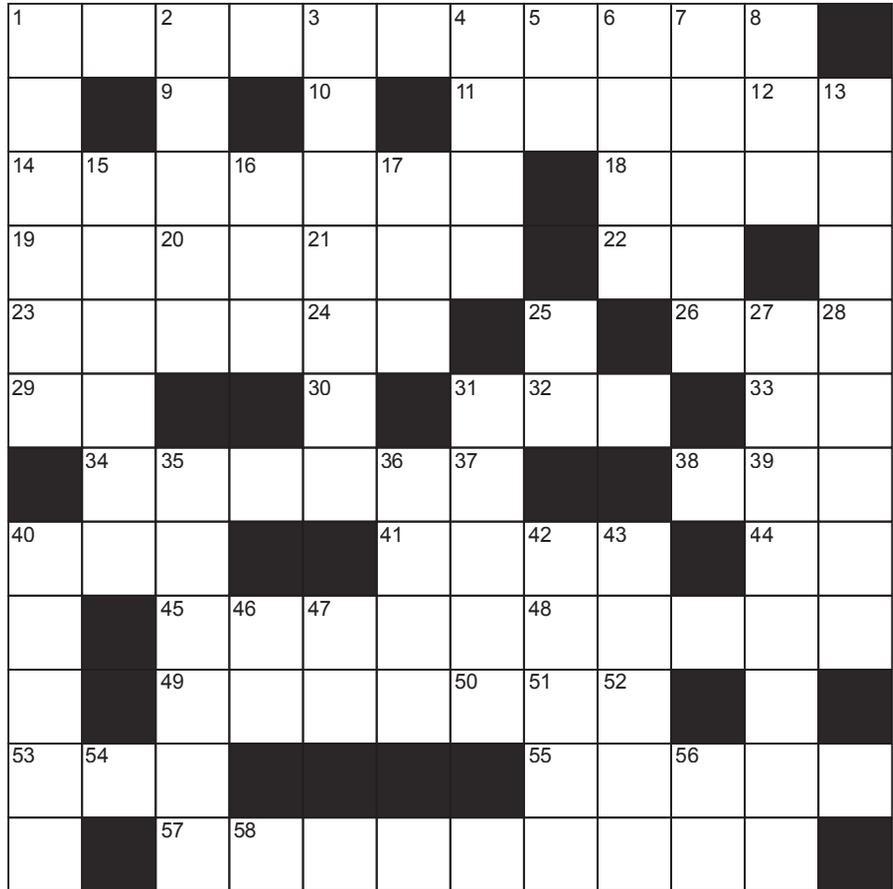
.....
ii. Now match these examples (a-d) to the statements (1-4):

- a. slut/whore
- b. The Spanish and French terms for courtier/courtesan
- c. prick/cunt
- d. fuck/shit

Crossword

Test how well you have retained the vocabulary from this issue of **Yes** by doing the following crossword

If you find the crossword difficult, do the easy clues (**in bold**) first. This will make the rest of the words much easier to find.



Across

1. oppressed
3. past participle of 'tread'
6. lair; playroom (*US English*).
Anagram of 'end'
11. womb. Anagram of 'suture'
- 12. you and me - American?**
14. male parents
16. possessive pronoun
18. one's parent's sibling.
Anagram of 'tuna'
19. charm, spellbind
20. repeated rhythmic phrase
21. industrious insect.
Anagram of 'tan'
- 22. long-playing (record) (initialism)**
23. horrified, shocked
26. hot beverage popular in the UK and Ireland
29. preposition
31. the normalized abbreviation of 'brassiere'
32. Egyptian sun god
- 33. no name; not to be noted (initialism)**
34. athlete, sprinter - type of bean?
38. ovum
40. friend. Anagram of 'lap'
41. desire
44. elevated railway (*abbreviation*)
45. female humourist
49. faeces and urine (*technical*)
- 50. estimated time of arrival (initialism)**

51. informal 'thank you'
53. conjunction. UK
homophone of 'gnaw'
54. conjunction. UK
homophone of 'awe'
55. shouts (n.); weeps (v.)
57. massacre
58. chuckling, guffawing, hilarity

Down

1. loss. Opposite of 'victory'
- 2. woman who practises black magic. Homophone of 'which'**
3. treachery, perfidy
4. dethrone, overthrow
- 5. delirium tremens (initialism)**
6. agreement. Anagram of 'lead'
7. explode, eject lava
8. woman in a convent.
Homophone of 'none'

9. cutaneous irritation
10. motive; logic
13. throttle
14. achievement. Homophone of 'feet'. Anagram of 'fate'
15. wool, goat, cat or rabbit.
Anagram of 'Aragon'
- 16. half-hardy annual, Historic Houses Association (initialisms)**
- 17. Registered Nurse Tutor, Royal National Theatre (initialism)**
19. consume food. anagram of 26 ACROSS
23. @
- 24. male child. Homophone of 'sun'**
25. same as 54 ACROSS.
Homophone of 'oar'
27. produce, generate
28. perspective. Anagram of 'angel'
30. preposition - activated?

31. woman who is marrying
34. same as 32 ACROSS
35. abscesses, pustules
36. big jug for carrying water.
Anagram of 'were'
37. mount a horse, use a bike
39. masculine, feminine or neuter?
40. small coin; girl's name
42. situation (*slang abbreviation*)
43. vital organ. Anagram of 'earth'
46. domesticated bovine animal; a castrated bull
47. Monaco (*internet address*)
48. same as 9 DOWN
- 52. the product of human creativity. Homophone of 'rat'**
- 53. New York (initialism)**
56. that is, namely (*Latin initialism used in English*)

8. Homophones. The following text discusses psychology today. However, we have changed 81 words for their homophones. Try to find them and change them back so that the text makes sense:

Watt drawers peepul to a psychotherapist's couch inn 2014? That's the question Louise Chunn asked recently inn an article inn *The Guardian*. Inn looking for the answer she interviewed a series of therapists from across the UK. The information she gathered tells us a lot about modern society and watt is going wrong inn our communities.

Won evident - and unsurprising problem - is work insecurity. As psychotherapist Nicola Blunden commented, "Theirs a lot of stress now surrounding work". Peepul feel insecure about there jobs. "Stress is incremental and clients have become acclimatized. Its the body that calls a halt to the situation. Theirs sow much adrenaline that ewe have panic attacks, ore get weepy, awe can't sleep. Its a read warning light that yew are inn a dangerous situation". Psychoanalytical psychotherapist Susanna Abse describes the mental impact of the economic environment as 'radical uncertainty'. She has noticed that her patience "are talking a lot moor about money than before". Unemployment is knot particularly hi inn Briton "but their is sew much fear about work: that their isn't enough, that Yule bee kicked out, that their aunt the same bonds underneath us as their whirr. Its bin much worse since 2008."

Another area that causes problems is the internet. A lot of young men use internet pawn on a daily basis and either they or there partners worry that they are addicted. "Its immensely sad to sea sew many peepul inn there 20s. Theirs a lot moor depression, anxiety and unhappiness than peepul of that age group used to suffer", concludes psychotherapist Helen Rowland.

The internet also plays on our insecurities. If someone looks up information about, say, hare loss, the next thyme they log inn they are inundated with pop-ups about it "reminding them of there worries", says psychotherapist Jenny Halson. Moreover, internet is almost an invitation for wood-bee stalkers; it is sow easy to follow ex-partners on social media and the knowledge that they are moving on can be both addictive and painful.

Moreover, a gnu moor experimental attitude to relationships and sexuality often causes acute insecurity inn part because peepul are knot aware of the cultural baggage they have internalized. "Many men don't realize that they carry inn there minds and harts very rigid notions of watt they should bee", remarks Jungian analyst, Andrew Samuels.

Finally, Jenny Halson has many South Asian patience. "Weather they are seek, Hindu or Muslim, their will B anxieties, such as: "Am eye safe?"; "Will peepul think I'm Muslim because I have brown skin?"; "Watt do peepul really think when there talking to me?"

Sew the picture is a bleak won: economic insecurity, internet, islamophobia and the Islamic State sewing stress and unhappiness across the UK.

When you have finished doing the exercise, read the text again - it's interesting!

9. Debates: Varied Listening. Listen to the **Mini-Debates** (audio tracks 1-3) and answer the questions according to what the speakers say. Obviously, this can be done as three separate exercises:

1. Debate 1: Listen to the first debate and, as you do, answer the following questions:

1. What three incidental facts do we learn about East Anglia?
2. Under what circumstances is public transport better?
3. Under what circumstances is a private car better?
4. What disadvantages to owning a car are mentioned?
5. What alternative US term for 'public transport' is mentioned and commented on?
6. What term is used for a vehicle that has more than one person in it?
7. What term is used for the special tax on vehicles used in Central London?
8. What additional disadvantage of public transport is mentioned?
9. What additional advantage of public transport is mentioned?
10. What does the American man manage to do each week as a result of using public transport?

2. Debate 2: Listen to the second debate. What do the following numbers refer to:

1. 44%
2. 86m²
3. 50%
4. 15
5. 3
6. 9 and 7.
7. 3

ii. Listen again. What other factors - apart from absolute size - determine whether a home is detrimental for mental health?

3. Debate 3: Listen to the third debate and, as you listen, match the pairs of half sentences according to what you hear:

1. There's been some really big hassle about	a. I enjoy flying less and less and less.
2. I can't stand it when I've got some 10-year-old kid there	b. isn't actually banned by the Federal Aviation Agency.
3. Aeroplanes can cause a lot of tension	c. just for people being in such close proximity and not having enough space.
4. If you want to travel better,	d. just jamming his feet into my back.
5. Well, the thing is this knee defender device	e. there are those options.
6. I've notice that	f. whether people put their chairs back or not on the planes.

ii. Retell the incident over the knee defender that is described by the American speaker.

10. Too Many Words. Read the article on pp. 13-15. Below we offer the last paragraph on p. 14. However, there is an unnecessary word in each line. Identify it and write it on the right:

1. But once women start having children, their relative pay drops down 1 _____
2. substantially, and the more children who they have, the more 2 _____
3. their pay falls back behind. Heather Joshi of London's City University 3 _____
4. found that women who have an interrupted career path can expect to 4 _____
5. earn less than the half of the income in their life as those who do not. 5 _____
6. Reasons for this include the fact that the women would have no 6 _____
7. income while they stay at home, but also because of they will have 7 _____
8. failed to move up on the promotional ladder during their absence, and 8 _____
9. might even have to accept a less skilled job than the one they left from. 9 _____

11. Read the article about **Boudica** on pp. 22-23. Below we offer you the short answers to a series of questions about the article - you have to supply the questions. Try to do this first without looking at the article. When you have done all you can, try to give the other questions by scanning the article. Notice that in this case the answers are not in the same order as in the text:

1. Prasutagus died that year.
2. 80,000
3. In 43CE
4. The British were prohibited from carrying weapons that year.
5. Around 70,000.
6. In 30CE
7. She had two daughters.
8. 2000 were.
9. In 54CE

12. Mary Wollstonecraft. Read the article on pp. 37-38. Then, without looking back, put the following events in their correct chronological order:

- | | | | |
|----------------------|---|----------------------|---|
| <input type="text"/> | a. Mary attempts suicide by taking a laudanum overdose. | <input type="text"/> | h. Mary travels to Portugal to look after Fanny Blood. |
| <input type="text"/> | b. Mary attempts to drown herself in the Thames. | <input type="text"/> | i. Mary travels to revolutionary France. |
| <input type="text"/> | c. Mary decides to become a professional writer. | <input type="text"/> | j. Mary travels to Scandinavia. |
| <input type="text"/> | d. Mary founds a school in Newington, London. | <input type="text"/> | k. Mary works as a governess in Ireland. |
| <input type="text"/> | e. Mary has a daughter with Gilbert Imlay. | <input type="text"/> | l. Mary writes <i>A Short Residence in Sweden, Norway and Denmark</i> . |
| <input type="text"/> | f. Mary has a daughter with William Godwin. | <input type="text"/> | m. Mary writes <i>A Vindication of the Rights of Women</i> . |
| <input type="text"/> | g. Mary joins a circle of great radical thinkers in London. | <input type="text"/> | n. Mary's school closes. |

13. Read and listen to the **pronunciation article** on p. 79 (and audio track 4). Then, without referring back to the article, fill the gaps in these euphonic expressions:

1. g_____ in p_____ (= high-society portraits of women)
2. w_____ men's l_____ b (= the emancipation of females)
3. J_____ sey G_____ l (= a movie starring Liv Tyler and Ben Affleck)
4. L_____ ttle W_____ men (= a novel by Louisa May Alcott)
5. _____ ster _____ man (= the key British voter at the beginning of the 21st Century)
6. a w_____ king g_____ l (= a salaried young woman)
7. W_____ men and ch_____ ldren first (= the chivalry of the sea)

14. Pronunciation Round-up. Throughout the magazine we provide the phonetic transcription of the words that cause the greatest pronunciation problems. Practise these words from Yes 18 by answering the following questions:

1. Is 'mayor' (p. 7, n. 6) a homophone of 'mare' in British English?
2. Is 'puff' (p. 7, n. 11) a homophone of 'poof'?
3. 'Amok' (p. 8, n. 5) is also spelt a. amock b. amuck c. amoke, reflecting its pronunciation.
4. How do we pronounce 'enamel' (p. 11, n. 18): a. /i'næməl/ b. /e'neiməl/ c. /'i:nəməl/?
5. Does 'haste' (p. 29, n. 3) rhyme with a. faced b. past c. vast?
6. Does 'privy' (p. 29, n. 23) rhyme with a. ivy b. skivvy c. TV?
7. Is 'Satan' (p. 31, n. 16) a homophone of 'satin'?
8. Does 'coven' (p. 32, n. 16) rhyme with a. oven or b. proven?
9. Is sew (p. 34, n. 10) a homophone of a. sue b. show c. so d. saw?
10. Does 'tomb' (p. 41, n. 6) rhyme with a. comb b. womb (p. 43, n. 12) c. come?
11. Is the second syllable in 'solace' (p. 53, n. 8) pronounced like that in
 a. necklace (p. 54, n. 11) b. police c. shoelace?
12. Does 'drown' (p. 54, n. 23) rhyme with a. phone b. grown c. clown?
13. Is 'guild' (p. 55, n. 16) a homophone of a. gild b. willed c. wild?
14. Does 'monk' (p. 72, n. 6) rhyme with a. punk b. honk c. plonk?
15. Does 'binding' (p. 74, n. 16) rhyme with a. rescinding b. reminding?
16. How do we pronounce the first syllable of 'couplet' p. 81, n. 8): a. cup b. cope c. coop?
17. Does 'male' (p. 82, n. 2) rhyme with: a. finale b. locale c. inhale?

15. Improvisation: the Soccer Fan. Listen to audio track 9 and, as you do, answer the following questions:

1. How many goals did Darren's team score?
2. How many goals did Phil's team score?
3. Who does Phil blame for the result?
4. What film did Deborah watch on TV at the weekend?
5. What is Deborah's point?
6. What colour is the strip of Darren's team?

16. Comprehension Multiple Choice. Read the article on Anglo-Saxon Women on pp. 24-25. Then, choose the best synonym for the underlined words in this context:

Embroiders and Peace-Weavers

In the **1. Early Middle Ages** English **2. embroidery** was the best in Europe. Internationally, embroidery was known as *opus anglicanum* (= English work). The prestigious **3. task** of embroidering was exclusively the work of women. Ironically, the Normans commemorated their victory over the Anglo-Saxons in 1066 by having Englishwomen **4. weave** the famous Bayeux Tapestry. One of the most important functions of noblewomen was as 'peace-weavers'. These were women who were married to **5. leading** members of a rival tribe as a physical **6. embodiment** of a **7. truce**. Such a role sounds very passive but history tells us that peace-weavers could be **8. anything but**. For example, King Alfred's daughter, Aethelflæd, was married as a peace-weaver to Aethelred, king of West Mercia. From 907 to 915 she organized the building of a **9. chain** of fortified towns to defend West Mercia. As Aethelred's **10. health** **11. failed**, she **12. took over** the **13. leadership** of the army against the Danes. The king died in 911 and it was Aethelflæd who led the West Mercians to capture Derby in 917 and Leicester in 918. In fact, she was one of England's great military leaders.

1. the Early Middle Ages

- a. the High Middle Ages b. the Dark Ages c. the Renaissance d. Prehistory

2. embroidery

- a. cuisine b. beer-making c. art of decorating textiles d. commotion

3. task

- a. job b. ivory c. work of art d. bar

4. weave

- a. design b. buy c. study d. make

5. leading

- a. senior b. rich c. knowledgeable d. marginal

6. embodiment

- a. gift b. incarnation c. strategy d. suffering

7. truce

- a. stratagem b. truth c. work of art d. peace agreement

8. anything but

- a. exactly the opposite b. whatever they liked c. politically astute d. nothing at all

9. chain

- a. metal barrier b. road c. channel d. series

10. health

- a. riches b. luck c. savings d. well-being

11. failed

- a. deteriorated b. consolidated c. improved d. accumulated

12. took over

- a. took control of b. suppressed c. reorganized d. abolished

13. leadership

- a. maritime transport b. control c. river vessel d. politics

17. Phrasal Verbs. Throughout the magazine phrasal verbs are identified and explained in the footnotes. Fill the following sentences with phrasal verbs from Yes 18. The first letter of the base verb and the particle are given to help you. The page (p.) and footnote (n.) reference is also given:

1. They were only married for nine months before they s_____ u_____. (p. 7, n. 4)
2. Could you d_____ u_____ a list of the attributes of your ideal candidate? (p. 10, n. 14)
3. Archaeologists have d_____ u_____ an Anglo-Saxon treasure hoard in Ely. (p. 11, n. 3)
4. Ian p_____ o_____ the contradictions in my argument. (p. 17, n. 2)
5. We're not professional collectors but we do d_____ i_____ antiques. (p. 19, n. 8)
6. The Ebola virus has s_____ a_____ West Africa at an astonishing rate. (p. 23, n. 20)
7. The Wallabies threatened to score a try but the All Blacks d_____ them b_____. (p. 23, n. 26)
8. My father s_____ a_____ the Pacific in the 1950s. (p. 25, n. 6)

18. Phrasal Verbs. Read the article on p. 83 and then fill the gaps without looking back:

1. If you're going to the kitchen, could you p_____ the kettle o_____, please?
2. They accused Rodney of h_____ u_____ a bank.
3. Oh, I g_____ u_____! This crossword is too difficult for me.
4. The priest advised the fugitive to t_____ himself i_____.
5. Like a lot of adolescents, Jimmy is very w_____ u_____ in himself.
6. Well, at least I can c_____ o_____ you, Mabel.
7. He tried to get me to accept a false banknote but I s_____ right t_____ him.
8. She never g_____ o_____ the fact that he had been cheating on her all that time.
9. When they ran out of ammunition the heroic defenders g_____ i_____.
10. Did you c_____ o_____ my instructions?

19. Idioms. Read the article on pp. 80-81. Then, without looking back, complete the following sentences:

1. They say that if a pregnant woman suffers from acne, she's going to have a girl - but that's just an old _____ tale.
2. When I get in I have to feed and bathe the kids and once they're in bed, tidy up a bit. A woman's work is never _____!
3. I hope you're ready for your ex's revenge - hell hath no _____ like a woman scorned!
4. When the shopping centre caught fire I thought it would be women and children _____ but it turned out to be every man for himself!
5. Jack claimed that Stephanie used womanly _____ to get the promotion but I think he's just sore he wasn't chosen.
6. You've finally named the day? It was about time he made an _____ woman of you!
7. Tony's a real party animal. Life's all _____, women and song for him.
8. You ate the last chocolate? Oh, _____, thy name is woman!

20. False Friends. Read the article on p. 82. Then, without looking back, correct the underlined word in the following sentences:

1. He led a major campaign to inform young people about the dangers of cocaine and heroine.
2. I'd love to come to the pub with you. Give me 10 minutes to take a douche. I've been running and I'm rather sweaty!
3. The princes wore a tiara and a beautiful flowing satin dress.
4. I'd categorize that painting in the gender of still life.
5. If you don't get married soon you'll end up a matron, Sheila.
6. Sanger freed women from the risk of getting embarrassed every time they had sex.

21. False Friends Round-up. Throughout the magazine false friends are identified and explained in the footnotes. The following sentences contain false friends from **Yes 18** that are incorrectly used here. Correct the underlined words in the following sentences so that they make sense. The page (p.) and footnote (n.) reference is given:

1. Have you seen any good movies ultimately? (p. 11, n. 8)
2. Stephen Hawking is the most famous physician since Einstein. (p. 17, n. 12)
3. If you don't remove the mashed potato while it's heating up it will stick to the bottom of the pan. (p. 20, n. 12)
4. An author should show more respect for his or her lecturers. (p. 21, n. 18)
5. I haven't worn shorts since I was a scholar! (p. 28, n. 14)
6. The Prime Minister's destitution of the unpopular Minister was widely applauded. (p. 33, n. 4)
7. It's especially insane to eat chips with mayonnaise like the Dutch do. (p. 33, n. 31)
8. John's taking us to watch a Formula One career this weekend. (p. 35, n. 2)
9. This tie isn't large enough. It doesn't even reach my belly button! (p. 41, n. 21)
10. The people of Iran are surprisingly sympathetic to Western tourists. (p. 43, n. 15)
11. Since he became unemployed he spends much of his time watching TV shows about successes and other mindless reality TV.
12. Jane Eyre was brought up by her parents after her mother and father died. (p. 74, n. 4)
13. I was once intoxicated by the seafood at that restaurant. (p. 76, n. 2)
14. It's the most diverting film I've seen in years - a laugh a minute! (p. 100, n. 177)
15. Misericord is one of the central values of all the great religions. (p. 100, n. 188)
16. The moment she stepped onto the scenario she couldn't recite a word. (p. 102, n. 218)

22. Wordplay. Read the article on Victorian Women and Islam (pp. 42-43). Then, without looking at the article, find five words from the article. Use the clues and the numbers; each number represents a letter:

1 2 3 4 2 5 6 7 8 9 10	<table border="1" style="width: 100%; height: 20px; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td> </tr> </table>																					○ →	domination of one group by another
11 9 7 12 13 14 12 9 9 16	<table border="1" style="width: 100%; height: 20px; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td> </tr> </table>																					○ →	maternity
11 8 1 9 5 17 10 17	<table border="1" style="width: 100%; height: 20px; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td> </tr> </table>																					○ →	contempt for and prejudice against women
11 13 16 8 6 13 18 6 19	<table border="1" style="width: 100%; height: 20px; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td> </tr> </table>																					○ →	relating to the Middle Ages; uncivilized
12 17 1 7 13 14 13 20 7 9 11 17	<table border="1" style="width: 100%; height: 20px; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td> </tr> </table>																					○ →	the removal of the womb

23. Reading Comprehension: After reading the 'Women Pirates' article on pp. 34-36, try to answer the questions given below. Try to do this exercise without looking back at the text. This way you can test both your reading comprehension and memory skills.

1. In which bodies of water did the female Viking pirates Alfhild and Groa captain their ships in the 9th Century?
2. Where was the pirate Granuaile O'Malley from and who did she fight against on the sea?
3. Why did Granuaile O'Malley pay a visit to Queen Elizabeth of England in 1593? What was the outcome of the meeting?
4. Elizabethan England had a famous female pirate named Lady Mary Killigrew. Her daughter-in-law, Elizabeth, and son, John, carried on the family pirating tradition. What was Elizabeth's most famous prize and what happened as a result?
5. What was the name of the famous female pirate in the Mediterranean that dressed up like a man and where was she from? (Clue: She was known as "Dick" and "Captain Rudolph".)
6. An anonymous Indian queen became world famous after capturing which English ship in 1684?
7. Which two famous cross-dressing buccaneers escaped execution because they were pregnant?
8. What was the reason that drove Fanny Campbell to become a pirate?
9. When Cheng I Sao was still known as His-kai she was not a powerful female pirate. What profession did she practise when she met Cheng I?
10. Who did the Cantonese pirate Cheng I Sao marry in order to consolidate the family pirating business?
11. How did Sadie the Goat get her name?
12. How did Sadie the Goat lose one of her ears?
13. Where did Sadie and "The Daybreak Boys" operate as pirates?
14. The Chinese woman pirate, Lai Choi San, obtained a lot of money during her activities on the high seas. What nickname was she given as a result of this wealth?
15. How did Lai Choi San become famous?

24. Internet Video Listening. This exercise is based on the insightful TED Talk by Sheryl Sandberg about why there are so few women leaders. As you watch the video - (<http://goo.gl/hYnyl3>) - answer the following questions. If necessary listen a second time:

1. What proportion of world leaders are women?
2. Are women better represented in the world's parliaments or corporate boardrooms?
3. What didn't the New York equity manager know?
4. How was her brother's attitude on the European Intellectual History course different from hers and from that of her friend?
5. What three factors do women attribute their success to?
6. Who was Howard Roizen?
7. What did the woman at Facebook learn from Sheryl's talk?
8. What are the benefits of households with equal earning and equal domestic responsibilities?
9. What was surprising about the woman who consulted Sheryl about leaving work to have a child?

25. Names

i. Hebrew-derived names. Read the article on p. 74. Then, without looking back, match these names to their meanings:

1. Ann	a. bee
2. Deborah	b. binding
3. Jessica	c. ewe
4. Rachel	d. gift
5. Rebecca	e. God has favoured me
6. Sarah	f. plain
7. Sharon	g. princess

ii. Pronunciation. Read the article on p. 75. Each row below begins with a Celtic name from the article. Choose which one of the other words to the right rhymes with the name on the left:

1. Sian	barn	seein'	sane
2. Sinéad	Sidney	she made	sinned
3. Siobhan	forlorn	fireman	my barn
4. Sine	sign	sinner	meaner

iii. Anglicizing Gaelic Names. Read the article on p. 76. Then, without looking back, write the Anglicized form next to each of these Gaelic names:

1. Ciara _____
2. Máirín _____
3. Muirgheal _____
4. Shelagh _____

iv. Brythonic Names. Read the article about Anglo names from Cornish and Welsh. Can you remember what the phonemes *glen* and (*g*)*wen*/*(g)**wyn* mean, without looking back?

26. US vs. UK English. Read the article on p. 78. Then, without looking back at the article, try to answer the following questions:

1. How do the British spell the US word 'mom'?
2. What is a boob tube in US English?
3. What is a boob tube in British English?
4. Are the terms 'dame' and 'broad' complimentary in US English?
5. Would a British woman be offended if you called her a 'dame'?
6. What is a 'beast' in US slang?
7. What is a 'beast' in British slang?
8. What does an American mean when s/he refers to a 'tramp'?
9. What is a 'tramp' in the UK?

27. Gender-specific words. Read the article on pp. 70-73. Then, without looking back at the article, pair up the following masculine and feminine terms:

landlady	actor	aunt	poetess	barman	headmistress
bride	king	daughter	girl	gentleman	steward
man	heroine	shepherdess	lady	landlord	niece
nun	uncle	groom	monk	poet	prince
queen	barmaid	nephew	shepherd	sister	witch
spinster	wizard	bachelor	stewardess	headmaster	waitress
widow	boy	son	hero	wife	princess
husband	woman	actress	brother	waiter	widower

ii. Now, without looking at the article, decide whether the following sentences are incorrect in Modern English:

1. What a lovely baby - how old is it?
2. Their ship was caught in a terrible storm but she battled valiantly through it and limped into port two days later.
3. Not only was the Titanic the largest ocean liner ever constructed, it was also one of the fastest.
4. One of the cows died when it fell down the mountainside into a gully and broke its back.
5. My dog's called Shep - he's a collie.
6. Each parent has a responsibility for his child.
7. Katharine Hepburn was one of the 20th Century's greatest actors.
8. Every flight attendant knows that her first responsibility is for passenger safety.
9. My uncles and my cousins live in Dundee. They form a very happy family.
10. You shouldn't discriminate against people because of ethnicity, sexuality or gender.
11. KNOCK, KNOCK, KNOCK - "Who is it?"
12. Sappho was a great poet from Lesbos.

28. Bette Davis Trivia. Read the article on pp. 62-65. The answers to the following questions are not necessarily in the article; this is just a bit of fun for film buffs:

1. In 1934 Davis played a promiscuous waitress opposite Leslie Howard in *Of Human Bondage*. Who wrote the original novel on which it was based?
2. She starred opposite Howard again in *The Petrified Forest* (1936). Who was the other male lead?
3. In 1938 Davis made a *Gone With the Wind* spinoff - what was it called?
4. Which English queen did Davis play in 1939 opposite Errol Flynn? (She played her again in 1955).
5. In *The Old Maid* (1939) and *The Great Lie* (1941) director Edmund Goulding explored the question of surrogate motherhood. Who starred opposite Davis in both movies?
6. In which Agatha Christie movie did Davis appear in 1978?
7. Davis pulled out of her last movie *Wicked Stepmother* (1989) and her role was taken over by _____.
8. Which American actress sang the song 'Bette Davis Eyes' in the movie *Duets* in 2000?

29. Prepositional Cloze. Read the Explorers article on pp. 28-29. The following text is taken from Isabella Bird's *The Yangtze Valley* (1899). She has just been attacked by a crowd of angry townspeople in Liang-shan Hsien accusing her of being a child-eating foreign devil. She has just taken refuge in a tavern:

There was then a riot 1___ earnest; the men had armed themselves 2_____ pieces 3___ the doorway, and were hammering 4_____ the door and wooden front 5___ my room, surging 6_____ the door to break it down, howling and yelling. *Yang-kwei-tze!* (= foreign devil) had been abandoned as too mild, and the yells, as I learned afterwards, were such as "Beat her!" "Kill her!" "Burn her!" The last they tried to carry 7_____ effect. My den had a second wooden wall 8___ another street, and the mob 9___ that side succeeded 10___ breaking a splinter out, 11_____ which they inserted some lighted matches, which fell 12___ some straw and lighted it. It was damp, and I easily trod it out, and dragged a board 13___ the hole. The place was all but pitch-dark, and was full 14___ casks, boards, and chunks 15___ wood. The door was secured 16___ strong wooden bars. I sat down 17___ something 18___ front 19___ the door 20___ my revolver, intending to fire 21___ the men's legs if they got in, tried the bars every now and then, looked 22_____ the cracks, felt the position serious - darkness, no possibility 23_____ escaping, nothing 24___ humanity to appeal 25___, no help, and a mob as pitiless as fiends. Indeed, the phrase, "hell let loose", applied 26___ the howls and their inspiration.

They brought beams up to break in the door 27_____, and 28___ every rush - and the rushes were made 29_____ a fiendish yell - I expected it to give way. 30___ last the upper part 31___ the door caved in a little. They doubled their efforts, and the door 32___ another minute would have fallen in, when the beams were thrown down, and 33___ the midst 34___ a sudden silence, there was a rush 35___ many feet, and 36___ a few minutes the yard was clear, and soldiers, who remained 37___ the night, took up positions there.

30. Monologues. Listen to audio tracks 5-8 and decide whether these statements are true (T) or false (F):

1. The first speaker is scared by the technological advances that are coming.
2. He thinks that the People's Republic of China is the only country that will surpass the USA in the next half century.
3. He believes that climate change is a serious but manageable problem.
4. In the light of what has been achieved in recent decades, the second speaker has little optimism that we will have solved our big problems in 50 years' time.
5. The third speaker thinks that environmental problems will lead to food scarcity and growing social conflict.
6. Although he thinks we will have serious problems, he isn't concerned about the survival of humanity on that time frame.
7. The fourth speaker agrees that Mankind is not at risk within the next 50 years.
8. He thinks there is reason for optimism in likely developments in nuclear technology.
9. He is worried that Communists from China and Russia will destroy capitalism.
10. He says that societies must protect themselves from the super-rich.

31. Wordplay - Class Activity. In this activity you have to find words in a box of letters. Words are formed by a series of adjacent letters. A word can twist and turn provided that each letter is adjacent to the previous letter in the word. You cannot use the same letter-square twice in the same word (but you can of course use the letter again in your next word). Words must have two or more letters and be found in a Standard English dictionary. Past forms, plurals and so on are valid. You get one point for each word you find in the word square which no other player also has. You have three minutes to find the words.

Practice square:

B	I	M	B	O
W	O	M	E	N
G	I	R	L	S
N	I	E	C	E
B	R	O	A	D

i. In this practice square you should be able to see the words **BONES** and **COIN**. Can you find any more? There are at least another 53 words!

ii. Now you should be ready to play against each other. Each player in turn should choose a letter to fill the letter-boxes in the square below. We recommend that you mix vowels and consonants - otherwise it's more difficult! **We suggest that you photocopy this page and use the photocopy - if you don't, then you can only play once!**

 Make a note of any new vocabulary you have found in the course of the exercise. Try and use each word several times in the course of the next few days.

32. Etymological quiz. Read the article about English witches on pp. 31-33. Below we offer you seven explanations of the origin of the word 'witch'. You have to decide which one is true and which ones are invented. If possible, do this as a group activity:

1.
'Witch' has the same origin as its homophone 'which'. Both come from Old English *wich*, which meant "of what kind?" and the noun came to describe an ambiguous or duplicitous person. Once this idea had been established in Middle English, the spelling of the two words was differentiated by adding a 't' and an 'h' respectively to form the modern words 'witch' and 'which'.

2.
The word 'witch' comes from the Indo-European root **weg-* (the asterisk means that the word has been reconstructed), which meant 'to be lively', 'to be strong'. This root also gave us such diverse words as 'watch', 'wake', 'wicked', 'vigour', 'vegetable' and 'velocity'. 'Witch' itself, comes from the Germanic term **wikkjaz*, which meant "someone who wakes the dead".

3.
'Witch' comes from the Old Saxon word *wecg* meaning a triangular-shaped segment. This word gives us the Modern English word 'wedge', as well as the Dutch word *wegge* (= a wedge-shaped cake). 'Witch' originally implied a divisive or conflictive person, i.e. somebody who drives a wedge between other people.

4.
A 'witch' was originally just a woman whose husband had died. In fact, 'witch' and 'widow' both come from the Old English term *widocha*. This term was related to the Latin *vidua*, the Spanish *viuda*, the Russian *vdová* and the Welsh *widh*. Most of the unfortunate women accused of black magic were widows and eventually 'witch' came to be used only for such women.

5.
The word 'witch' comes from the Old Saxon term *wecha* (or *wacha*). This word has also given us the Modern English word 'wench', which means a 'girl' or a 'maidservant'. The Old Saxon noun was related to the adjective *wanco*, which meant 'inconstant'. Over the centuries the idea of an inconstant woman evolved into that of a female heretic.

6.
'Witch' comes from the Latin term *vitium*, which gives us the Provençal *vetz*, the Italian *vezzo* and the Modern English 'vice' (= corruption). Originally, a witch was either a man or a woman who was considered a corruptor.

7.
Both 'witch' and 'wretch' come from the Old English word *wrecca*, which was spelt (and pronounced) *wecca* in the Wessex region. In Old English a *w(r)ecca* was first an exile and later a miserable person. By the end of the Old English period the word meant a despicable person. This continues to be the basic meaning of 'wretch', while "witch" came to have a more specific meaning.

33. Sentence Transformation. Complete the second sentence so that it means the same thing as the first sentence. The word in **bold** must be one of the words you use to fill the gap; do not change the form of this word. Each gap requires between two and five words. Page (p.) and footnote (n.) references for each structure are given:

1. Chelsea were more likely to win the match.

greater (p. 7, n. 3)

Chelsea _____ of winning the match.

2. The crowd went berserk and began smashing shop windows.

amok (p. 8, n. 5)

The crowd _____ and began smashing shop windows.

3. You should consider seasonal variations in your forecast.

account (p. 16, n. 11)

You should take seasonal variations _____ in your forecast.

4. It's good to see Jim's recovered and is active outside his home again.

about (p. 20, n. 1)

It's good to see Jim's recovered and is _____ again.

5. Their job is to ensure that there are equitable conditions for competition.

field (p. 21, n. 16)

Their job is to ensure that there is a _____.

6. The rioters stormed the presidential palace and razed it.

ground (p. 23, n. 17)

The rioters stormed the presidential palace and _____.

7. But I thought Mary had promised to marry Ian, not Kevin.

betrothed (p. 25, n. 1)

But I thought Mary _____ Ian, not Kevin.

8. He had already attempted suicide twice before.

kill (p. 37, n. 17)

It was the third time that he had _____.

9. Her early novels are certainly sufficiently interesting.

worth (p. 38, n. 4)

Her early novels are well _____.

10. Every family has some unpleasant secrets.

closet (p. 40, n. 8)

Every family has some _____.

11. Be wary of strangers who try to befriend you.

make (p. 44, n. 21)

Be wary of strangers who try to _____ you.

12. I've followed your example and given up red meat.

lead (p. 53, n. 19)

I've _____ and given up red meat.

ANSWERS

1.

Check your answers against the footnotes

2.

- i. 1e, 2g, 3a, 4c, 5i, 6h, 7b, 8d, 9f.
ii. 1f, 2d, 3a, 4g, 5h, 6i, 7c, 8b, 9e.

3.

- i. *Sense & Sensibility, Pride & Prejudice, Mansfield Park, Emma, Northanger Abbey, Persuasion, Sanditon*
ii. a. = 5, b. = 2, c. = 1, d. = 3, e. = 6, f. = 4

4.



- | | | |
|------------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1. ASTRONOMER | 2. SCHOLAR | 3. FIELDWORK |
| 4. DNA | 5. TREATISE | 6. PENICILLIN |
| 7. COMET | 8. GEOLOGY | 9. SEROTONIN |
| 10. INSULIN | 11. NATURALIST | 12. METABOLISM |
| 13. ASTRONOMY | 14. HEREDITARY | 15. WITCHCRAFT |
| 16. PALEONTOLOGY | 17. BOTANIST | 18. GEOMETRY |
| 19. TRANS FATS | 20. ENTOMOLOGY | 21. OVARIES |
| 22. GENUS | 23. VOLUNTEER | 24. SPECIES |
| 25. CHEMISTRY | | |

5.

- | | | |
|------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. behind | 2. tried | 3. destiny |
| 4. figure | 5. sleeping | 6. stake |
| 7. falls | 8. original | 9. haste |
| 10. way | 11. claimants | 12. friends |
| 13. failed | 14. plead | 15. stripped |
| 16. struck | 17. eye | |

6.

1. sex 2. less 3. pejorate 4. isn't
ii. 3a, 4b, 2c, 1d.

7.



8.

What draws people to a psychotherapist's couch **in** 2014? That's the question Louise Chunn asked recently **in** an article **in** *The Guardian*. **In** looking for the answer she interviewed a series of therapists from across the UK. The information she gathered tells us a lot about modern society and **what** is going wrong **in** our communities.

One evident - and unsurprising problem - is work insecurity. As psychotherapist Nicola Blunden commented, "**There's** a lot of stress now surrounding work". **People** feel insecure about **their** jobs. "Stress is incremental and clients have become acclimatized. **It's** the body that calls a halt to the situation. **There's so** much adrenaline that **you** have panic attacks, **or** get weepy, **or** can't sleep. **It's** a red warning light that **you** are **in** a dangerous situation". Psychoanalytical psychotherapist Susanna Abse describes the mental impact of the economic environment as 'radical uncertainty'. She has noticed that her **patients** "are talking a lot **more** about money than before". Unemployment is **not** particularly **high in Britain** "but **there** is **so** much fear about work: that **there** isn't enough, that **you'll be** kicked out, that **there aren't** the same bonds underneath us as **there were**. **It's been** much worse since 2008."

Another area that causes problems is the internet. A lot of young men use internet **porn** on a daily basis and either they or **their** partners worry that they are addicted. "**It's** immensely sad to **see so** many **people in their** 20s. **There's** a lot **more** depression, anxiety and unhappiness than **people** of that age group used to suffer", concludes psychotherapist Helen Rowland.

The internet also plays on our insecurities. If someone looks up information about, say, **hair** loss, the next **time** they log **in** they are inundated with pop-ups about it "reminding them of **their** worries", says psychotherapist Jenny Halson. Moreover, internet is almost an invitation for **would-be** stalkers; it is **so** easy to follow ex-partners on social media and the knowledge that they are moving on can be both addictive and painful.

Moreover, a **new more** experimental attitude to relationships and sexuality often causes acute insecurity **in** part because **people** are **not** aware of the cultural baggage they have internalized. "Many men don't realize that they carry **in their** minds and **hearts** very rigid notions of **what** they should **be**", remarks Jungian analyst, Andrew Samuels.

Finally, Jenny Halson has many South Asian **patients**. "**Whether** they are **Sikh**, Hindu or Muslim, **there** will **be** anxieties, such as: "Am I safe?"; "Will **people** think I'm Muslim because I have brown skin?"; "**What** do **people** really think when **they're** talking to me?"

So the picture is a bleak **one**: economic insecurity, internet, islamophobia and the Islamic State **sowing** stress and unhappiness across the UK.

9.

1. it's at sea-level, it's very flat and it's sunny.
2. When you can sit, read and relax.
3. When public transport is full and you have to stand all the way.
4. car insurance, instalment payments, car maintenance/upkeep, fuel costs, stress
5. mass transit
6. high occupancy
7. congestion charge
8. the health risk from contagion
9. you get more exercise
10. read a book

2.

1. The reduction in average house size in Britain over the last 90 years/since 1924.
2. The current average size of a home in the UK.
3. The proportion of the population of the UK that live south of the Watford Gap.
4. The number of the 100 top British companies that were located in Scotland in 1980.
5. The number of the 100 top British companies that are located in Scotland now.
6. The ages of the Northern Irish man's sons.
7. The average number of mud huts per family (in traditional rural South African society).
- ii. relative family size, climate, culture, the number of generations living together, acoustic insulation, previous personal experience

3.

- 1f, 2d, 3c, 4e, 5b, 6a.
- ii. On a flight from New York to Denver a man was using a knee defender. When the woman in front wanted to recline her seat he offered to give her a little more room but she took the opportunity to force her seat all the way back. In the process Coca-Cola was spilt on a laptop. The pilot diverted the flight to Chicago and left the man and the woman there.

10.

1. down, 2. who, 3. back, 4. path, 5. the (half), 6. would, 7. of, 8. on, 9. from.

11. (suggested questions: wording may vary)

1. Who died in 60CE?
2. How many Britons died when Boudica was defeated by Suetonius Gaius Paulinus?
3. When did Claudius become the Roman Emperor?
4. What happened in 50CE?
5. How many people were killed by Boudica's army?
6. When was Boudica born?
7. How many children did Boudica have?

8. How many Roman legionaries of the 9th Legion were killed by Boudica's army in an ambush?
9. When did Claudius die?

12.

- 1d, 2h, 3n, 4k, 5c, 6g, 7m, 8i, 9e, 10a, 11j, 12b, 13l, 14f.

13.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. girls in pearls | 2. women's lib |
| 3. Jersey Girl | 4. Little Women |
| 5. Worcester Woman | 6. a working girl |
| 7. Women and children first | |

14.

- | | | | | | |
|--------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. Yes | 2. No | 3. b | 4. a | 5. a | 6. b |
| 7. No | 8. a | 9. c | 10. b | 11. a | 12. c |
| 13. a | 14. a | 15. b | 16. a | 17. c | |

15.

1. 2
2. 0
3. the ref(eree)
4. Free Willy (this in implied, not stated)
5. that her colleagues no more participated in the match than she participated in the movie.
6. blue

16.

- 1b, 2c, 3a, 4d, 5a, 6b, 7d, 8a, 9d, 10d, 11a, 12a, 13b

17.

- | | | |
|------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. split up | 2. draw up | 3. dug up |
| 4. pointed out | 5. dabble in | 6. swept across |
| 7. drove... back | 8. sailed across | |

18.

- | | |
|-------------------|---------------|
| 1. put... on | 2. holding up |
| 3. give up | 4. turn... in |
| 5. wrapped up | 6. count on |
| 7. saw... through | 8. got over |
| 9. gave in | 10. carry out |

19.

- | | |
|-----------|------------|
| 1. wives' | 2. done |
| 3. fury | 4. first |
| 5. wiles | 6. honest |
| 7. wine | 8. frailty |

20.

- | | | |
|-----------|---------------------------|-------------|
| 1. heroin | 2. shower | 3. princess |
| 4. genre | 5. an old maid/a spinster | 6. pregnant |

21.

- | | |
|----------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. recently/lately | 2. physicist |
| 3. stir | 4. readers |
| 5. schoolboy | 6. dismissal |
| 7. unhealthy | 8. race |
| 9. long | 10. friendly |
| 11. crimes | 12. relatives/relations |
| 13. poisoned | 14. funniest |
| 15. Mercy/Compassion | 16. stage |

22.

subjugation, motherhood, misogyny, mediaeval, hysterectomy

23.

1. In the Baltic and North Seas.
2. Ireland; rival Irish clans and the English.
3. She met with Queen Elizabeth to complain that the Governor of Connaught was interfering with her pirate activities. As a result, the queen told the governor to leave O'Malley alone.
4. Elizabeth captured the María de San Sebastián in January 1582. In response to the Spanish owners' complaints, the English courts forced her into retirement.
5. Charlotte de Berry; England.
6. Merchant's Delight.
7. Mary Read and Anne Bonny.
8. She turned to piracy when she found out that her boyfriend was being held prisoner in a jail in Havana.
9. She was a prostitute.
10. Her adopted son, Chang Pao.
11. She was known as "The Goat" because of her skill of head-butting people in the stomach.
12. She lost her ear when it was bitten off by Gallus Mag during a fight.
13. In the New York, Brooklyn and New Jersey areas.
14. The "Queen of the Macao Pirates" was also known as "Mountain of Wealth".
15. She became famous after she was interviewed by A Finnish journalist during one of her raids.

24.

1. 9 out of 190 (> 5%)
2. boardrooms (15% vs. 13%)
3. where the women's WC was in his office.
4. He studied much less but he was much more self-confident.
5. help from somebody else, luck and hard work
6. A fictional male version of Heidi Roizen
7. That she had to keep her hand up (i.e. look for opportunities the way men do).
8. A lower divorce rate and more sex
9. She wasn't married and didn't even have a boyfriend.

25.

i. 1e, 2a, 3d, 4c, 5b, 6g, 7f.

ii.

- | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1. Sian-barn | 2. Sinéad-she made |
| 3. Siobhan-forlorn | 4. Sine-meaner |

iii.

- | | |
|-----------------|------------|
| 1. Kiera | 2. Maureen |
| 3. Muriel/Meryl | 4. Sheila |

iv. 'pure' and 'beautiful'

26.

1. mum
2. the TV
3. a woman's tight-fitting strapless top made of stretchy material that accentuates the breasts, a tube top (US)
4. no.
5. no, it is an honorary title
6. an ugly woman, a 'dog'
7. a sex offender
8. a promiscuous woman, a scrubber (UK)
9. a homeless person, a hobo (US)

27. ii.

1. ✓ If there is something that clearly identifies the baby's sex then you would say "he" or "she"
2. ✓ It could be 'it battled...' too
3. ✓ It could be 'she was also...' too
4. ✓ It could be 'she' if the cow had a name
5. ✓
6. X ('his or her' or 'her or his')
7. ✓
8. X ('her or his' or 'his or her')
9. X ('My uncle, aunt and cousins')
10. theoretically wrong ('...sexuality or sex') though very common
11. ✓
12. ✓ ('great poetess' would also be correct)

28.

- | | |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. W. Somerset Maugham | 2. Humphrey Bogart |
| 3. <i>Jezebel</i> | 4. Elizabeth I |
| 5. George Brent | 6. <i>Death on the Nile</i> |
| 7. a cat! | 8. Gwyneth Paltrow |

29.

1. in
2. with
3. of
4. at/on
5. of
6. against
7. into
8. to/onto
9. on
10. in
11. through
12. on
13. over
14. of
15. of
16. by
17. on
18. in
19. of
20. with
21. at
22. through
23. of
24. of
25. to
26. to
27. with
28. at
29. with
30. At
31. of
32. in/after
33. in
34. of
35. of
36. in
37. for

30.

1F, 2F, 3T, 4T, 5T, 6F, 7T, 8T, 9F, 10T

31.

ace, be, bimbo, bin, bingo, biro, bone, bore, bow, bread, bring, broad, cad, core, else, gin, girl, girls, gob, gore, in, ire, lead, led, men, mime, more, mow, niece, nob, on, one, ones, or, orb, ore, read, rib, rig, ring, road, rob, roe, row, score, sea, sled, wig, wing, womb, women, wore, worm

32.

The correct explanation is number 2.

33.

- | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. had a greater probability | 2. ran amok |
| 3. into account | 4. out and about |
| 5. level playing field | 6. burned it to the ground |
| 7. was betrothed to | 8. tried to kill himself |
| 9. worth reading | 10. skeletons in the closet |
| 11. make friends with | 12. taken your lead |

Want to receive an exercise every week, our monthly newsletter and our methodology pack – all absolutely **FREE**? All you have to do is subscribe to our newsletter on the webpage.
www.yes-mag.com



YOUR ENGLISH SUPPLEMENT

STAFF

Anglo Files, S.L. (publisher)

Nicholas Franklin (editor)
nick@yes-mag.com

Marina Carresi
(artistic director and
photography, proofreading)
marina@yes-mag.com

Nathan Burkiewicz
(sub-editor, page-design, webmaster)
nathan@yes-mag.com

Fabiola Vieyra (promotion)

Josh Tampico (sound engineer)

Gonzalo Cohen (legal)

WRITERS, VOICES, INVALUABLE SUPPORT & HELPING HANDS

Douglas Jasch, Silvia Gimeno Siehr, Prof. Raoul Franklin, Colman Keane, Miles Pratt, Almudena Cáceres, Susannah Jones, Robbie K. Jones, Garrett Wall, AmyJo Doherty, James Duggan, Jim Trainor, Rod E. Musselman, Adrian Hall, Paul Thomas, John Adedoyin, Hamish Binns, Lois Humphrey, Julie Davies, Irene Tremblay, Dave Mooney, Howard Brown, Bea Alzona, Saskia Eijkins.

PHOTOGRAPHY

Marina Carresi, Leonardo L. Carresi, Sara L. Carresi, Inma Isla, Mario Herrera



**PLEASE CHECK OUR WEBPAGE FOR THE
FULL UPDATED LIST OF YES STOCKISTS.**

VISIT US ONLINE

www.yes-mag.com

FOR MORE INFORMATION, WRITE TO US AT INFO@YES-MAG.COM



Nicholas Franklin
nick@yes-mag.com



Marina Carresi



Nathan Burkiewicz
nathan@yes-mag.com



@yeszine



facebook.com/YesZine



info@yes-mag.com

Published by Anglo Files S.L. C/ Bronce 27, 11-B, Madrid 28045
Depósito legal: M-9788-2013 // **ISSN:** 2255-5676
PVP: 9,95€ VAT included/incluido IVA // **Printed in Spain**

All rights reserved. Neither all nor part of this magazine can be reproduced, recorded in or transmitted by any information-recovery system by any means, be it mechanical, photochemical, magnetic, electronic, photocopies or any other method or used for commercial purposes without prior written permission from the publisher and in accordance with the Intellectual Property Law. Any violation of these terms and conditions will be prosecuted to the fullest extent of the law.

In the Next Volume of
Your English Supplement

ANGLO PAINTING & THE ENGLISH OF ART

- Great painters of the Anglosphere
- How to love great art

WORDPLAY DOSSIER

- Word games for learning English
- **Fun with Words:** kangaroo words, boomerang words, skeuomorphs, oxymorons, puns, eggcorn terms and other forms of fun with language



Plus loads more stuff on economics, internet, science, news, language etc. which we haven't decided yet!

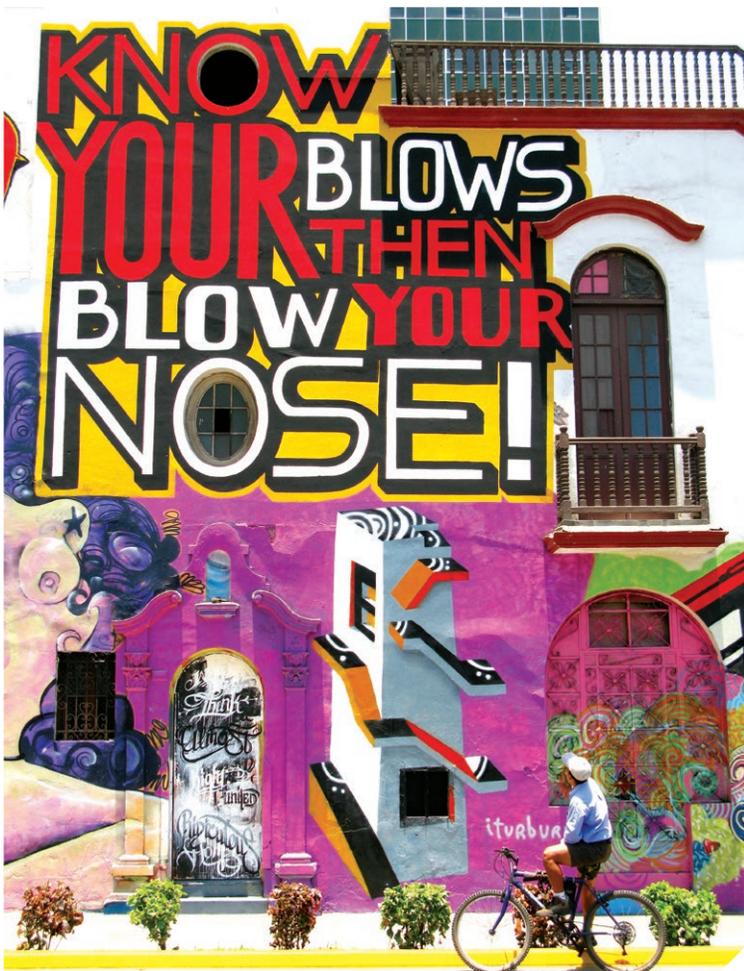


Photo by Hdepot



madridplayers

PRESENTS



Little Red Riding Hood

A PANTOMIME

written and directed
by Aki Ginory

DECEMBER

FRIDAY 12th 19:30

SATURDAY 13th 16:00 & 19:30

SUNDAY 14th 12:00 & 16:00

COLEGIO CARDENAL SPÍNOLA

C/ CARDENAL MARCELO SPÍNOLA, 34



DUQUE DE PASTRANA
BUSES: 16, 29, 70, 14, 107, 150



RESERVATIONS AND INFORMATION: WWW.MADRIDPLAYERS.ORG

SPONSORED BY:

modalia.com
fashion anywhere



RUNNYMEDE COLLEGE
British International School • Madrid